

NATIONAL DIPLOMA (ND)

DENTAL THERAPY

CURRICULUM AND COURSE SPECIFICATIONS

PLOT B, BIDA ROAD, P.M.B.2239, KADUNA -NIGERIA

OCTOBER, 2024

FOREWARD

With a growing demand for oral health services, the need for well-trained dental technicians has become increasingly apparent.

The National Diploma in Dental Therapy curriculum is designed to produce skilled dental technicians who can contribute significantly to oral healthcare in Nigeria.

This curriculum, developed to meet the evolving needs of the dental profession, provides a solid foundation in dental and clinical practice. It is designed to equip students with the necessary knowledge and skills to provide quality dental care,

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to Dental Therapist Registration Board of Nigeria (DThRBN) who sponsored and contributed to the review of this non-terminal curriculum. Their expertise and dedication have been instrumental in shaping this curriculum

I hope that this curriculum will be implemented effectively to produce competent dental technicians who can make a positive impact on oral health in Nigeria.

Prof. Idris M. Bugaje, **EXECUTIVE SECRETARY,** NBTE Kaduna.

TABLE OF CONTENT

CONTENTS

FORWARD	2
TABLE OF CONTENT	3
GENERAL INFORMATION	5
CURRICULUM TABLE	14
YEAR ONE SEMESTER ONE:	
Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving I	18
Human Anatomy and Physiology I	22
Foundation of Dental Therapy	30
YEAR ONE SEMESTER TWO:	
Dental Therapy Instrumentation	37
Oral Physiology	42
Care and Maintenance of Dental Equipment	52
General Pathology I	57
Human Anatomy and Physiology II	62
Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving II	69
Oral Hygiene	76

Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	
YEAR TWO SEMESTER ONE:	
Oral Anatomy	86
Phantom Head	92
Oral Health Education	98
General Pathology II	103
Dental Instrument I	108
Dental Radiography I	114
Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	120
YEAR TWO SEMESTER TWO:	
First Aid and Dental Emergencies	125
Anatomy of Head and Neck	131
Principles of Sterilization	140
Dental Materials	146
Introduction to Clinical Practice	155
PRACTICAL MANUAL	160

GENERAL INFORMATION

1.0 TITLE OF THE PROGRAMME: The title of the programme is National Diploma Dental Therapy

2.0 GOAL AND OBJECTIVES OF THE PROGRAMME

- **2.1 Goal:** The National Diploma (ND) programme in Dental Therapy is designed to produce technicians who will assist in various dental health activities under the supervision of a dental therapist/surgeon.
- **2.2 Objectives:** At the end of the programme, the student should be able to:
 - 1. Examine tooth morphology and tooth carving.
 - 2. Examine organization, structure and functions of the human body
 - 3. Recognize the evolution of Dental Therapy
 - 4. Examine Dental Therapy instruments
 - 5. Recognize functions of the oral tissues
 - 6. Provide the care and maintenance of equipment and instruments.
 - 7. Apply pathological progress of oral diseases.
 - 8. Assist in carrying out cleaning of the mouth
 - 9. Recognize developmental process of the tooth
 - 10. Assist in pre-clinical practical skills in periodontal debridement (scaling and polishing)
 - 11. Assist in giving good oral health instruction
 - 12. Observe the simulation in phantom head studio using dental therapy hand instruments
 - 13. Observe the procedures for Dental Radiography
 - 14. Observe how to handle emergency cases
 - 15. Recognize anatomy of the head and neck
 - 16. Observe process of Sterilization in Dental Health Care
 - 17. Examine Dental materials
 - 18. Observe procedures of clinical practice

3.0 ENTRY REQUIREMENTS:

The general entry requirements for the ND in Dental Therapy are:

- a. At least a minimum score in the Unified Tertiary Matriculation Examination (UTME).
- b. Candidates for the programme shall possess minimum of five (5) credits passes in NABTEB/WAEC/GCE/SSCE/NECO or its equivalents in not more than two sittings to include: English Language, Mathematics, and any other three from Biology/Health Science, Physics and Chemistry.

4.0 STAFFING REQUIREMENT

4.1 Headship of the Department:

The HOD should not be lower than a Senior Lecturer in rank. He should be qualified in the discipline/field of study and have post-qualification cognate experiences in industry, teaching and educational management to guarantee to the Board that the department is being efficiently and effectively run. He should possess at least a good HND/B.Sc Degree with relevant Postgraduate Degree and also be a registered Dental Therapist with the Dental Therapists' Registration Board of Nigeria.

4.2 Core Teaching Staff:

At the point of mounting the programme, there should be a minimum of four (4) Lecturers or three (3) Lecturers and one (1) Instructor from Lecturer II and above with B.Sc. /BDTH/ HND in Dental Therapy, BDS with additional Higher Degrees in the following areas:

- Dental Therapy
- Public Health
- Social Work
- Health Education

4.3 Technical Staff:

These are technically qualified staff not involved in direct lecturing/instructing, but who provide vital and indispensable services in all facilities used in the implementation of the programme. They possess minimum of Diploma in Dental Surgery Technicians and HND in Dental Therapy

5.0 CAREER AND ACADEMIC PROSPECTS

5.1 Academic Progression

Holders of the ND are eligible for admission into HND. The programme is non-terminal but Students graduate into HND.

6.0 DURATION

The duration of the programme is two academic sessions consisting of four semesters of 17 weeks each. (15 weeks academic activities and 2 weeks for Registration & Examinations).

7.0 CURRICULUM

- **7.1** The curriculum of the ND programme consists of four main components. These are:
 - i. General Studies/Education
 - ii. Foundation Courses
 - iii. Core Courses
 - iv. Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme (SIWES)
- 7.2 The General Education component shall account for not more than 15% of total contact hours for the programme.
- **7.3 Foundation Courses:** include courses in English Language, Mathematics, and three other subjects, from the sciences humanities or mixtures of both. The number of hours will vary with the programme and may account for about 10-15% of the total contact hours.
- **7.4 Professional Courses**: are courses, which give the student the theory and practical skills needed to practice in his/her field of specialization at the technical level. These may account for between 60-70% of the total contact hours of the programme.
- **7.5 Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme (SIWES)** shall take place during the long vacation following the end of the second semester of the first year. See details on SIWES.

8.0 CURRICULUM STRUCTURE

The structure of the ND programme consists of four semesters of Classroom, Laboratory, Field Trips and Workshop activities in the college and Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme at the end of second semester of the first year.

Each semester shall be of 17 weeks duration made up as follows: 15 contact weeks of teaching, lecture recitation and practical exercises, etc and 2 weeks for tests, quizzes, examinations and registration.

9.0 ACCREDITATION

The National Board for Technical Education shall accredit the programme before the Diplomats can be awarded the National Diploma certificates. Details about the process of accrediting the programme for the award of the National Diploma are available from the office of the Executive Secretary, National Board for Technical Education, Plot "B", Bida Road, P.M.B. 2239, Kaduna, Nigeria.

10.0 CONDITION FOR PROGRESSION INTO HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA

10.1 The programme is non-terminal, Students graduate into HND:

- a. Satisfactory performance in all prescribed course work which may include class work, tests, quizzes,
- b. Clinical experience
- c. SIWES experience
- d. Satisfactory performance at all semester examinations.
- e. Satisfactory completion of final year project work.
- f. Normally, for all courses including final year project work, continuous assessment contributes 30% while semester examinations and project reports are weighted 70% to make a total of 100%.

10.2 Classification of Diploma

National Diploma (ND) shall be awarded in four classes as follows:

Distinction - CGPA of 3.50 and above
Upper Credit - CGPA of 3.00 – 3.49
Lower Credit - CGPA of 2.50 – 2.99
Pass - CGPA of 2.00 – 2.49

10.3 Grading of Courses:

Courses shall be graded as follows:

MARKED RANGE	LETTER GRADE GRADE	WEIGHTING
75% and above	A	4.00
70% – 74%	AB	3.50
65% - 69%	В	3.25
60% - 64%	BC	3.00
55% - 59%	С	2.75
50% - 54%	CD	2.50
45% – 49%	D	2.25
40% – 44%	Е	2.00
Below 40%	F	0.0

11.0 GUIDANCE NOTES FOR TEACHERS

- 11.1 The new curriculum is drawn in unit courses. This is in keeping with the provisions of the National Policy on Education which stress the need to introduce the semester credit units which will enable a student who so wishes to transfer the units already completed in an institution of similar standard from which he/she is transferring.
- 11.2 In designing the units, the principle of the modular system by product has been adopted, and each of the professional modules, when completed provides the student with Officers/technician operative skills, which can be used for employment purposes or self-reliance.
- 11.3 As the success of the credit unit system depends on the articulation of the programme between the institutions and industry, the curriculum content has been written in behavioral objectives, so that it is clear to all the expected performance of the student

who successfully completed some of the courses or the diplomates of the programme. This is slight departure in the presentation of the performance-based curriculum which requires the conditions under which the performance is expected to be carried out and the criteria for the acceptable levels of performance. It is a deliberate attempt to further involve the staff of the department teaching the programme to write their own curriculum stating the conditions existing in their institution under which performance can take place and to follow that with the criteria for determining an acceptance level of performance.

The Academic Board of the institution may vet departmental submission on the final curriculum. Our aim is to continue to see to it that a solid internal evaluation system exists in each institution for ensuring minimum standard and quality of education in the programmes offered throughout the TVET Institution system.

11.4 The teaching of the theory and practical work should, as much as possible, be integrated. Practical exercises especially those in professional courses and laboratory work should not be taught in isolation from the theory. For each course, there should be at least balance of theory to practical in the ratio of 70:30.

11.5 ASSESSMENT:

	Classwork Works	/practical	&Laboratory	Total
Examination				70
CA				30
Total				100

12.0 PRACTICAL LOGBOOK

A personal Logbook to be kept by each student shall contain all day-to-day, weekly summary and semester summary of all the practical activities from day one to the end of the programme. This is to be checked, marked, endorsed and recorded by the lecturers/technologists concerned at the end of every week.

13.0 FINAL YEAR PROJECT

Final year students in this programme are expected to carry out a project work. This could be on individual basis or group work of not more than three students per group, but reporting must be undertaken individually. The project should, as much as possible be related to the programme. Project reports should be well presented and should be properly supervised. The departments should make their own arrangement of schedules for project work.

GUIDELINES ON SIWES PROGRAMME

For the smooth operation of the SIWES the following guidelines shall apply.

14.1 Grading of SIWES

To ensure uniformity of grading scales, the institution should ensure that the uniform grading of students work, which has been agreed to by all TVET Institutions is adopted.

14.2 The Institution Based Supervisor

The institution-based supervisor should initial the log book during each visit. This will enable him to check and determine to what extent the objectives of the scheme are being met and to assist students having any problems regarding the specific assignments given to them by their industry-based supervisor.

14.3 Frequency of Visit

Institution should ensure that students placed on attachment are visited within one month of their placement. Other visits shall be arranged so that:

- i. There is another visit six weeks after the first visit; and
- ii. A final visit in the last month of the attachment.

14.4 Responsibility for Placement of Students

a. Institution offering the ND programme shall arrange to place the students in industry. By the end of second semester of the first academic session, six copies of the master list showing where each student has been placed shall be submitted to the Executive Secretary, NBTE, who shall, in turn authenticate the list and forward it to the Industrial Training Fund, Jos.

- b. The Placement Officer should discuss and agree with industry on the following:
 - i. A task inventory of what the student is expected to experience during the period of attachment. It may be wise to adopt theone already approved for each field by the industry-based supervisor.
 - ii. The evaluation of the student by the industry-based supervisor and the institution-based supervisor.
 - iii. The final grading of the student during the period of attachment should be weighted more on the evaluation by industry-based supervisor.

14.5 Evaluation of Students during the SIWES

In the evaluation of the student, cognizance should be taken of the following items:

- i. Punctuality
- ii. Attendance
- iii. General Attitude to Work
- iv. Respect for authority
- v. Interest in the field/technical area
- vi. Technical competence as a potential technician in his field.
- vii. Team work

14.6 Stipend for Students in SIWES

The rate of stipend payable shall be determined from time to time by the Federal Government after due consultation with the Federal Ministry of Education, the Industrial Training Fund and the National Board for Technical Education (NBTE).

14.7 SIWES as a Component of the Curriculum

The completion of SIWES is important in the final determination of whether the student is successful in the programme or not. Failure in SIWES is an indication that the student has not shown sufficient interest in the field or has no potential to become a skilled technician in the field. The SIWES should be graded on a 'Fail or Pass' basis. Where a student has satisfied all other requirements but failed SIWES he may only be allowed to repeat another four months SIWES at his/her own expense.

CURRICULUM TABLE

YEAR I SEMESTER I

S/N	COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	CU	СН
1	STB 112	Morphology and Physiology of Living Things	2	-	2	2
2	BCH 111	General Chemistry	2	-	2	2
3	BPH 111	Mechanics and Properties of Matter	2	-	2	2
4	STA 111	Introduction to Statistics	2	-	2	2
5	CHM 111	Primary Health Care	2	-	2	2
6	PCT 111	Introduction to Pharmacology	2	1	3	3
7	GNS 101	Use of English I	2	-	2	2
8	GNS 111	Citizenship Education I	2	-	2	2
9	MSQ	Mandatory Skills Qualification	-	-	-	2
10	COM 111	Introduction to Computing	2	1	3	3
11	DTH 111	Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving I	1	1	2	2
12	DTH 112	Human Anatomy and Physiology I	1	1	2	2
13	DTH 113	Foundation of Dental Therapy	2	-	2	2
Tota	1	1	22	4	26	28

YEAR I SEMESTER II

S/N	COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	T	P	CU	СН
1	GLT 111	General Laboratory Techniques	1	1	2	2
2	PTD 111	Technical Drawing	1	2	3	3
3	ENT 126	Introduction to Entrepreneurship I	2	1	3	3
4	GNS 121	Citizenship Education II	2	-	2	2
5	MSQ	Mandatory Skills Qualification	-	-	-	2
6	DTH 121	Dental Therapy Instrumentation	1	1	2	2
7	DTH 122	Oral Physiology	1	1	2	2
8	DTH 123	Care and Maintenance of Dental Equipment	1	1	2	2
9	DTH 124	General Pathology I	2	-	2	2
10	DTH 125	Human Anatomy and Physiology II	1	1	2	2
11	DTH 126	Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving II	1	1	2	2
12	DTH 127	Oral Hygiene	2	1	3	3
13		SIWES	-	-	-	-
Total	1	'	16	11	27	29

YEAR II SEMESTER I

S/N	COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	СН	CU
1	GNS 213	Medical Sociology	2	-	2	2
2	GNS 202	Use of English II	2	-	2	2
3	ENT 216	Introduction to Entrepreneurship II	-	-	2	2
4	DTH 211	Oral Anatomy	1	1	2	2
5	DTH 212	Phantom Head	1	2	3	3
6	DTH 213	Oral Health Education	1	1	2	2
7	DTH 214	General Pathology II	2	-	2	2
8	DTH 215	Dental Instrumentation I	1	1	2	2
9	DTH 216	Dental Radiography I	1	1	2	2
10	DTH 217	Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	2	-	2	2
Tota	l		13	6	21	21

YEAR II SEMESTER II

S/N	COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	СН	CU
1	STB 211	Introductory to Microbiology	1	2	3	3
2	NUD 122	Human Nutrition and Dietetics	2	-	2	2
3	DTH 221	First Aid and Dental Emergencies	1	1	2	2
4	DTH 222	Anatomy of Head and Neck	1	1	2	2
5	DTH 223	Principles of Sterilization	1	1	2	2
6	DTH 224	Dental Materials	2	1	3	3
7	DTH 225	Introduction to Clinical Practice	2	-	2	2
8	DTH 226	Project	-	-	2	2
ТОТ	AL	1	10	6	18	18

NOTE: Borrowed/Foundation/General Courses in *italics* above are to be obtained from the respective programme curricula. KEY:

L= Lecture hours, T= Tutorial hours, P= Practical hour

YEAR I SEMESTER I

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving I COURSE CODE: DTH 111 CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1						
GOAL: This course is designed to provide students to the knowledge of tooth morphology and skills of tooth carving.						

GENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0 Know terminologies used in Tooth Morphology
- 2.0 Know the difference between Deciduous and Permanent Human Dentition
- 3.0 Know the structure of each Tooth in the Human Dentition
- 4.0 Know Occlusion and Articulation

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving I COURSE CODE: DTH 111 CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1						
GOAL: This course is designed to provide students to the knowledge of Tooth Morphology and skills of Tooth Carving.						

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

General Objectives 1.0: Know terminologies used in Tooth Morphology

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CO	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define tooth	Explain tooth	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental Model
1-3	morphology	morphology	Whiteboard	Identify the	Identify the	
			Marker	surfaces of the	surfaces of the	
	1.2 List dental	Explain dental	Multimedia	teeth	teeth	
	terminologies e.g:	terminologies e.g.	Projector			
	 Mesial 	 Mesial 	Computer	Draw the structure	Draw the	
	 Distal 	• Distal	Internet	of a tooth	structure of a	
	 Occlusal 	 Occlusal 	Charts		tooth	
	• Crown	• Crown				
	• Root	• Root				
	 Pits/Fissures 	• Pits/Fissures				
	• Cusps	• Cusps				
	 Ridges 	 Ridges 				
	 Exfoliation 	 Exfoliation 				
	 Occlusion 	 Occlusion 				
	Articulation etc.	 Articulation 				

		etc.				
	1.3 Explain the dental	Explain the dental				
	terminologies listed	terminologies listed				
	in 1.2 above	in 1.2 above				
Genera	d Objective 2.0: Know the		iduous and Pe	rmanent Human Dent	ition	
4-6	2.1 Define Dentition	Explain Dentition	Textbooks		Guide student to:	Dental model
		1	Whiteboard	Identify the types	Identify the types	
	2.2 Describe the types of	Explain types of	Marker	of Human	of Human	
	Human Dentition	Human Dentition	Multimedia	Dentition	Dentition	
			Projector			
	2.3 Describe the	Explain the difference	Computer	Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
	difference between the	•	-	difference between	difference between	
	two types of	of Dentitions in terms	Charts	the two types of	the two types of	
	Dentitions in terms of:	of:		Dentitions in terms	dentitions in terms	
	 Numbers 	 Numbers 		of:	of:	
	• Size	• Size		 Numbers 	 Numbers 	
	 Shape 	Shape		• Size	• Size	
	• Colour	• Colour		 Shape 	• Shape	
	 Structures 	 Structures 		• Colour	• Colour	
				 Structures 	• Structures	
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Know the	structure of each Tooth	In the Human	Dentition	I	
7-10	3.1 Define deciduous and	Explain deciduous	Textbooks	Identify each tooth	Guide students to:	Dental model
	permanent human	and permanent human	Whiteboard	in the deciduous	Identify each tooth	
	dentitions	dentitions.	Marker	and permanent	in the deciduous	Mixed
			Multimedia	human dentitions	and permanent	dentition
	3.2 Describe each tooth	Explain each tooth in	Projector		human dentitions	
	in deciduous dentition	deciduous dentition.	Computer	Identify the		
			Internet	functions of each	Identify the	
	3.3 Describe tooth in	Explain tooth in	Charts	tooth.	functions of each	
	permanent dentition	permanent dentition			tooth.	

	3.4 Explain the functions	Explain the		Draw and label	Draw and label	
	of each tooth	functions of each		each tooth	each tooth	
		tooth				
Genera	al Objective 4.0: Know Occ	lusion and Articulation				
11-15	4.1 Define Occlusion	Explain Occlusion	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental model
			Whiteboard			Articulator
	4.2 Describe the types of	Explain types of	Marker	Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
	occlusions	occlusions	Multimedia	types of occlusions	types of occlusions	
			Projector			
	4.3 Describe the	Explain the	Computer	Demonstrate types	Demonstrate	
	importance of	importance of	Internet	of malocclusions	types of	
	articulation in	articulation in	Charts		malocclusions	
	occlusion.	occlusion.				

EVALUATION:

C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Human Anatomy and Physiology I	COURSE CODE: DTH 112	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1		
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the student with knowledge of the organization, structure and functions of the system of the human body

GENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0 Know the Structure of the Human Body
- 2.0 Know the Human Cell Structure
- 3.0 Understand Human Tissues
- 4.0 Know the systems of the body
- 5.0 Understand the body fluids electrolytes and acid-base balance

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY

COURSE: Human Anatomy and Physiology I	COURSE CODE: DTH 112	CREDIT UNIT: 2
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the student with knowledge of the organization, structure and functions of the system of the human body

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

General Objectives 1.0: Know the Structure of the Human Body

THEOI	THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Learning	Activities	
				Outcome		
	1.1 Explain the following	Explain the following	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Human
1-4	terms associated with	terms associated with	Whiteboard			Skeleton
	anatomical descriptions:	anatomical	Marker	Identify the	Identify the	
	 Anterior 	descriptions:	Multimedia	external parts of	external parts of	Anatomical
	 Posterior 	Anterior	Projector	the human body.	the human body.	Models
	 Median 	 Posterior 	Computer			
	 Lateral 	 Median 	Internet	Identify the human	•	
	 Superior 	 Lateral 	Charts	body curvatures	body curvatures	
	 Interior 	 Superior 			.	
	 Plantar 	Interior		Demonstrate	Demonstrate	
	 Palmar 	 Plantar 		movements in	movements in	
	 Proximal 	 Palmar 		listed in 1.2	listed in 1.2	
	• Distal	 Proximal 				
	 Internal 	Distal				
	 External prone 	 Internal 				
		 External prone 				

• S	upine •	Supine
• S	agittal •	Sagittal
• 0	Coronal •	Coronal
		in the terms
1.2 Explain		iated with body
associa	ted with body move	
movem	ent: •Exte	ension
• Exte	ension •Flex	ion
• Flex	¢ion •Abd	uction
• Abo	duction •Add	uction
• Ada	duction •Pron	ation
• Pro	nation •Supi	nation
• Sup	ination •Prot	rusion
• Pro	trusion •Intru	ision
• Intr	usion • Rota	ition
• Rot	ation c	ircumduction
circ	umduction •Prot	raction
• Pro	traction •Retr	action
• Reta	raction	
	Expla	in the external
	parts	of the human
1.3 Describ	be the external body	
parts of	the human	
body	Expla	in the human
	body	curvatures
1.4 Describ	e the human	
body cı	ırvatures.	

Genera	al Objective 2.0: Know the H	uman Cell Structure				
5-8	2.1 Describe the human cell	Describe the human cell	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker	Identify the	Guide students to: Identify the	Microscope Posters
	2.2 Describe the different components of the human cell2.3 Explain the functions of the components of the cell in 2.2 above	Explain the different components of the human cell Explain the functions of the components of the cell in 2.3 above	Marker Multimedia Projector Computer Internet Charts	components of human cell Draw a well labelled diagram of the human cell and its components (constituents) Identify a typical human cell under	components of human cell Draw a well labelled diagram of the human cell and its components (constituents) Identify a typical human cell under	Anatomical Models
				the microscope.	the microscope.	
	al Objective 3.0 Understand	the human tissues				
9-11	 3.1 Define a tissue 3.2 Describe the types of tissues: Epithelial Connective Nervous Muscular 3.3 Explain the functions of 3.2 above 	Explain a tissue Explain the types of tissues: Epithelial Connective Nervous Muscular Explain the functions of 3.2 above	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Multimedia Projector Computer Internet Charts			
	3.4 Describe the composition of each of	Explain the composition of each				

	the tissues in 3.2	of the tissues in 3.2				
	above	above				
	3.5 Describe connective	Explain connective				
	tissue:	tissue:				
	• Blood	• Blood				
	 Calcified 	 Calcified 				
General	Objective 4.0: Know the sy	stems of the body				
12-13	4.1 Define the systems of	Explain the systems	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Posters
	the body	of the body	Whiteboard	Identify the	Identify the	
			Marker	different systems	different systems	Skeletal
	4.2 Enumerate the systems	Explain the systems	Multimedia	of the body	of the body	System
	of the body e.g:	of the body e.g:	Projector			
	 Skeletal 	 Skeletal 	Computer	Identify groups of	Identify groups of	Anatomical
	 Muscular 	 Muscular 	Internet	bones of the	bones of the	Model
	• Nervous	 Nervous 	Charts	skeletal system	skeletal system	
	 Digestive 	 Digestive 				System
	 Respiratory etc. 	 Respiratory etc. 		Draw and label the	Draw and label the	Models
				bones in each	bones in each	
	4.3 Describe the functions	Explain the functions		group	group	
	of the skeletal system	of the skeletal system				
					Identify the types	
	4.4 Describe the groups of	Explain the groups		Identify the types	of joints in the	
	bones of the skeletal	of bones of the		of joints in the	skeletal system	
	system:	skeletal system:		skeletal system	D 11.1.1.4	
	• Axial	 Axial 		D 11.1.1	Draw and label the	
	 Appendicular 	 Appendicular 		Draw and label	types of joints in	
				the types of joints	the skeletal system	
				in the skeletal	D 11-1-1-1	
				system	Draw and label the	

4.5 List joints in the	Explain joints in the		types of muscles	
skeletal system	skeletal system	Draw and label		
		the types of	Draw and label a	
4.6 List the types of	Explain the types of	muscles	human heart	
muscles that make up	muscles that make up			
the muscular system	the muscular system	Draw and label		
		a human heart		
4.7 State the structural	Explain the			
differences in the	structural differences			
muscles in 4.6 above	in the muscles in 4.6			
	above			
4.8 Describe the skeletal	Explain the skeletal			
muscles	muscles			
museles	museres			
4.9 State the functions of	Explain the functions			
the different types of	of the different types			
muscles in 4.6 above	of muscles in 4.6			
	above			
4.10 Explain the following	1			
group off muscles:	following group off			
Muscles of facial	muscles:			
expression	 Muscles of 			
Muscles of	facial expression			
mastication	 Muscles of 			
Muscles that move	mastication			
the head	Muscles that			
Muscles that move	move the head			
the chest	Muscles that			

	Muscles that move	move the chest			
	the arms	Muscles that			
	 Muscles that move 	move the arms			
	the limbs etc.	Muscles that			
	the fillios etc.	move the limbs			
		etc.			
	4.11 List the composition of				
	the cardiovascular	composition of the			
	System	cardiovascular System			
	System	Cardiovasculai System			
	4.12 Describe the functions	Explain the functions			
	of the heart	of the heart			
	of the neart	of the heart			
	4.12 Evaleia blood	Evalsia blood			
	4.13 Explain blood circulation	Explain blood circulation			
			. 1 '11	1 1	
	l Objective 5.0: Understand			ase balance	
13-15	5.1 Define homeostasis	Explain homeostasis	Textbooks		
			Whiteboard		
	5.2 Explain the	Explain the	Marker		
	maintenance of the	maintenance of the	Multimedia		
	internal environment	internal environment	Projector		
			Computer		
	5.3 Explain body fluid	Explain body fluid	Internet		
			Charts		
	5.4 State the locations of	Explain the locations			
	body fluid	of body fluid			
	5.5 Define the following:	Explain the			
	• Acid	following:			
	• Base	• Acid			

Electrolytes	• Base
 Acid-base balance 	 Electrolytes
	 Acid-base
	balance
5.6 List examples of each	Explain examples of
of 5.3 above	each of 5.3 above
5.7 Describe the different	Explain the different
composition of body	composition of body
fluids	fluids
5.8 List the electrolyte	Explain the
composition of body	electrolyte
fluids	composition of body
	fluids
5.9 Explain the functions	Explain the
of each of 5.3 and 5.4	functions of each of
above	5.3 and 5.4 above
5.10 Explain the	Explain the
hormonal control of	hormonal control of
body fluids and	body fluids and
electrolyte	electrolyte.

EVALAUTION: C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Foundation of Dental Therapy	COURSE CODE: DTH 113	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with Fundamental knowledge on the evolution of Dental Therapy

GENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0 Understand the Foundation of Dentistry and Dental Therapy Professions
- 2.0 Understand Philosophical basis of Dental Therapy Profession
- 3.0 Understand the History of Dental Therapy Profession in Nigeria
- 4.0 Understand the scope of Dental Therapy Profession
- 5.0 Appreciate the roles of the Regulatory Body
- 6.0 Understand the Ethics of Dental Therapy Profession at the Primary, Secondary and Tertiary Health Care Facilities

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY			
COURSE CODE: DTH 113	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with Fundamental knowledge on the evolution of Dental Therapy

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

General Objectives: 1.0 Understand the Foundation of Dentistry and Dental Therapy Professions

THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	ITENT	Γ		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities		
1-4	1.1Define Dentistry	Explain Dentistry	Textbooks				
			Whiteboard				
	1.2Define Dental Therapy	Explain Dental Therapy	Marker				
			Multimedia				
	1.3Explain the roles of	Explain the roles of	Projector				
	Dental team in Nigeria	Dental team in Nigeria	Computer				
			Internet				
	1.4Explain the roles of	Explain the roles of	Charts				
	Dental Therapy in	Dental Therapy in					
	Dental practice	Dental practice					
	1.5Discuss Global View	Explain Global View					
	of Dental Therapy	of Dental Therapy					
	Practice	Practice					

General Objective 2.0: Understand Philosophical Basis of dental therapy profession						
5-6	2.1 Explain the holistic	Explain the holistic	Textbooks			
	approach to oral health	approach to oral health	Whiteboard			
	within the context of	within the context of	Marker			
	general health	general health	Projector			
			Computer			
	2.2 Explain preventive	Explain preventive care	Internet			
	care as a core tenet of	as a core tenet of dental	Charts			
	dental therapy practice	therapy practice				
	2.2 E1-: (b1	Empleio dhe nele ef				
	2.3 Explain the role of	Explain the role of				
	dental therapy in	dental therapy in				
	undeserved community	undeserved community				
	2.4 Explain patient	Explain patient				
	empowerment through	empowerment through				
	oral health education	oral health education				
	2.5 Describe research and	Explain research and				
	evidence-based	evidence-based				
	guidelines in dental	guidelines in dental				
	therapy	therapy				
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Understand	the history of dental ther	apy profession in	n Nigeria	1	
7-8	3.1 Explain the history of	Explain the history of	Textbooks			
	dental therapy in	dental therapy in	Whiteboard			
	Nigeria	Nigeria	Marker			
			Multimedia			
			Projector			
			Computer			

	3.2 Explain the status of	Explain the status of	Internet	
	dental therapy	dental therapy practice	Charts	
	practice in Nigeria	in Nigeria		
	3.3 Explain the future	Explain the future		
	directions of dental	directions of dental		
	therapy practice in	therapy practice in		
	Nigeria	Nigeria		
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Understand	the scope of dental therap	by profession	
9-10	4.1 Explain the following	Explain the following	Textbooks	
	roles of dental	roles of dental	Whiteboard	
	therapist:	therapist:	Marker	
	 Plaque control 	 Plaque 	Multimedia	
	and dietary	control and	Projector	
	counselling:	dietary	Computer	
	involving	counselling:	Internet	
	scaling and	involving	Charts	
	polishing	scaling and		
	 Routing 	polishing		
	planning and	 Routing 		
	gingivectomy	planning and		
	 Application of 	gingivectomy		
	materials to the	 Application 		
	teeth such as	of materials		
	fluoride and	to the teeth		
	fissure sealant	such as		
	 Taking dental 	fluoride and		
	radiograph	fissure sealant		

• Duovidina danta	Toking dontal
Providing dental baskle advantion	
health education	
to individuals as	110 110 110 110
well as a	dental health
community	education to
Procedure of	individuals as
restoration of	well as a
deciduous teeth	community
Procedure of	Procedure of
extraction of	restoration of
deciduous teeth	deciduous
Local anesthesia	teeth
especially	Procedure of
infiltration of the	e extraction of
upper teeth	deciduous
Placement of	teeth
performed	• Local
crowns and	anesthesia
deciduous teeth	especially
can also be	infiltration of
performed	the upper
Placement of	teeth
temporary	Placement of
dressing on	performed
cavities	crowns and
Taking	deciduous
impression of	teeth can also
teeth	be performed
Educating	Placement of
patients on how	temporary
patients on now	- Pormy

to maintain good	dressing on
oral health	cavities
Treatment of	• Taking
physically	impression of
challenge,	teeth
medically	• Educating
compromised	patients on
patient and	how to
patients with	maintain good
learning	oral health
disabilities	• Treatment of
Carrying out	physically
wide range of	challenge,
clinical	medically
procedures	compromised
which are	patient and
preventive and	patients with
therapeutic	learning
• Their role as a	disabilities
lecturer/	Carrying out
researcher	wide range of
	clinical
	procedures
	which are
	preventive
	and
	therapeutic
	• Their role as a
	lecturer/
	researcher

Genera	l Objective 5.0: Appreciate	the roles of the Regulator	y Body		
11-12	5.1 Explain the history of	Explain the history of	Textbooks		
	Dental Therapists	Dental Therapists	Whiteboard		
	Registration Board of	Registration Board of	Marker		
	Nigeria (DThRBN)	Nigeria (DThRBN)	Multimedia		
			Projector		
	5.2 Explain the role of	Explain the role of	Computer		
	regulatory body	regulatory body	Internet		
	Dental Therapists	Dental Therapists	Charts		
	Registration Board of	Registration Board of			
	Nigeria (DThRBN)	Nigeria (DThRBN)			
	5.3 List the criteria to be	Explain the criteria to			
	a registered member	be a registered			
	of DThRBN	member of DThRBN			
Genera facilities	•	the ethics of dental thera	by profession at Primary, Sec	ondary and Tertiary hea	lth care
13-15	6.1 Explain ethical and	Explain ethical and	Textbooks		
	legal framework in	legal framework in	Whiteboard		
	dentistry	dentistry	Marker		
			Multimedia		
	6.2 Explain the ethics of	Explain the ethics of	Projector		
	dental therapy	dental therapy	Computer		
	profession in line	profession in line with	Internet		
	with National Oral	National Oral Health	Charts		
	Health Policy	Policy			
l	6.3 Explain ethical	Discuss ethical			
	decision-making,	decision-making, legal			

legal frameworks	frameworks relevant		
relevant to dental care	to dental care delivery		
delivery			

EVALUATION: C.A: 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

YEAR I SEMESTER II

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Dental Therapy Instrumentation I	COURSE CODE: DTH 121	CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1					
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1					

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with the knowledge of basic dental therapy instruments

- 1.0 Understand the objectives of instrumentation
- 2.0 Know the dental therapy basic hand instruments
- 3.0 Know the hand instruments required for tooth carving, phantom, head and the oral examination of patients
- 4.0 Understand the effects of careless instrumentation

COURS	SE: Dental Therapy Instrum	entation I	COURSE	E CODE: DTH 121	CREDIT UNIT:	2
			CONTAC	CT HOURS: 2	THEORETICA	L: 1
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II		PRE-RE	QUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1
GOAL:	This course is designed to j	provide the students with	the knowledg	ge of basic dental thera	apy instruments	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THE	EORETICAL AND PRA	CTICAL			
Genera	l Objectives 1.0: Understand	d the objectives of instru	mentation			
THEOI	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define	Explain	Textbooks			
1.2	Instrumentation	Instrumentation	Whiteboard			
1-3			Marker			
	1.2 State aim of	Explain aim of	Multimedia			
	instrumentation	instrumentation	Projector			
			Computer			
	1.3 Explain the objectives	Explain the objectives	Internet			
	of instrumentations on:	of instrumentations on	Charts			
	 Confidence of 	 Confidence of 				
	operator and	operator and				
	patients	patients				
	 Maintenance of 	 Maintenance of 				
	personal safety	personal safety				
	standard	standard				
	l Objective 2.0: Know dent		struments	,		
4-7	2.1 Describe dental	Explain dental	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Jacquette
	therapy instruments	therapy instruments	Whiteboard			
			Marker			Chisel

	2.2 List types of dental	Explain types of	Multimedia	Identify dental	Identify dental	
	therapy instruments	dental therapy	Projector	therapy	therapy	Hoe
		instruments	Computer	instruments	instruments	
	2.3 List sets of hand	Explain sets of hand	Internet			Excavator
	scalers in dental	scalers in dental	Charts	Draw and label	Draw and label	
	therapy i.e heavy and	therapy i.e heavy and		dental therapy	dental therapy	Curettes
	fine	fine		instruments	instruments	
						Charts
	2.4 Itemize the various	Explain the various				
	groups of hand scalers	groups of hand				
	for dental therapy e.g:	scalers for dental				
	 Jacquette 	therapy e.g:				
	• Chisel,	 Jacquette 				
	• Hoe,	 Chisel, 				
	 Excavator, 	 Hoe, 				
	• Curettes, etc.	 Excavator, 				
		• Curettes, etc.				
	2.5 Explain the different	Explain the different				
	types of scalers:	types of Scalers:				
	 Jacquette, 	 Jacquette 				
	• Hoe,	 Chisel, 				
	 Chisels, 	 Hoe, 				
	 Excavators, 	 Excavator, 				
	 Curettes etc 	• Curettes, etc.				
General	Objective 3.0: Know the h	nand instruments require	d for tooth car	ving, phantom, head	and the oral examinat	ion of
patients						
8-10	3.1 Describe the hand	Explain the hand	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Mixing
	instruments required	instruments required	Whiteboard	Identify the hand	Identify the hand	Bowl
	for the carving	for the carving	Marker	instruments	instruments	
				required for the		

	3.2 Describe the hand	Explain the hand	Multimedia	carving	required for the	Lecron
	instruments required	instruments required	Projector		carving	Carver
	for phantom head	for phantom head	Computer	Identify the hand	Identify the hand	
			Internet	instruments	instruments	Mixing
	3.3 Describe the hand	Explain the hand	Charts	required for	required for	spatula
	instruments required	instruments required		phantom head	phantom head	
	for the oral	for the oral				Carving
	examination of a	examination of a		Identify the hand	Identify the hand	wax
	patient	patient		instruments	instruments	
				required for the	required for the	
	3.4 Differentiate between	Explain how to		oral examination	oral examination	
	instruments identified	differentiate between		of a patient.	of a patient.	
	in 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3	instruments				
	above	identified in 3.1, 3.2		Sort the	Sort the	
		and 3.3 above		instruments	instruments	
				identified above	identified above	
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Understand	the effects of careless in	strumentation			
11-14	4.1 Define careless	Explain careless	Textbooks			
	instrumentation	instrumentation	Whiteboard			
			Marker			
	4.2 Explain damage/injury	Explain damage/injury	Multimedia			
	that can occur as a	that can occur as a	Projector			
	result of careless	result of careless	Computer			
	instrumentation	instrumentation	Internet			
	• to the instrument	• to the	Charts			
	 to the patient 	instrument				
	 to the operator 	 to the patient 				
		• to the operator				
	4.3 Explain how to avoid	Explain how to avoid				
	damage/injury	damage/injury				

identified in 4.2	identified in 4.2		
above	above		
4.4 Explain importance	Explain importance		
of good instrument	of good instrument		
handling	handling		

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Oral Physiology	COURSE CODE: DTH 122	CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1					
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1					

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge and skills of normal functions of the oral tissues

- 1.0 Understand the deposit in the mouth
- 2.0 Know the composition, sources and functions of saliva
- 3.0 Understand the mechanisms of calcium and phosphorous metabolism
- 4.0 Understand the mechanisms of mastication and swallowing
- 5.0 Know the physiology of taste perception and appreciation.
- 6.0 Understand the mechanism and process of tooth eruption

COURS	SE TITLE: Oral Physiolog	· ·	COURSE COI		CREDIT UNIT	
YEAR:	I SEMESTER:		PRE-REQUIS		PRACTICAL:	
	: This course is designed to					
	SE SPECIFICATION: THE			and skins of normal is	unctions of the orth	TISSUES .
	d Objectives 1.0: Know the		110110112			
	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-3	 1.1 Define tooth deposits 1.2 Explain types of deposits in the mouth: Soft deposits Hard deposits Dental stains 	Explain tooth deposits Explain types of deposits in the mouth: Soft deposits Hard deposits Dental stains	Whiteboard Marker Multimedia Projector Computer	Identify:	Guide students to: Identify:	Sample of deposits
	1.3 Discuss factors responsible for retention of deposits in the mouth1.4 List types of soft deposits in the mouth:	Explain factors responsible for retention of deposits in the mouth Explain types of soft deposits in the				
l	Salivary follicleMaterial alba	mouth: • Salivary				

Food debris	follicle		
Dental plague	Material alba		
Dental stain	 Food debris 		
	 Dental plague 		
1.5 Describe each of the	Explain each of the		
deposits in 1.4 above	deposits in 1.4 above		
1.6 Explain methods of	Explain methods of		
removal for each of	removal of each the		
the deposits in 1.4 above	deposits in 1.4 above		
	Explain calculus		
1.7 Define calculus (hard	(hard deposit)		
deposit)			
	Explain types of		
1.8 Describe types of calculus	calculus		
	Explain the		
1.9 Differentiate between	differences between		
types of calculus	types of calculus		
1.10 Explain the theories	Explain the theories		
of calculus formation	of calculus formation		
1.11 Define dental stains	Explain dental stains		
	Explain types of dental stains		

	1.13 State the causes of	Explain the causes of				
	dental stains	dental stains				
	1.14 Describe the	Evaluin the methods				
	methods of removing	Explain the methods of removing dental				
	dental stains	stains				
Genera	al Objective 2.0: Know the co		functions of s	 aliva		
4-6	2.1 Define saliva	Explain saliva	Textbooks		Guide students	Posters
4-0	2.1 Define sanva	Explain sanva	Whiteboard		to:	1 Osters
	2.2 State the different	Explain the different	Marker	Identify location	Identify location	Atlas
	sources of saliva e.g.	sources of saliva e.g.	Multimedia	of salivary glands	of salivary glands	7 Kids
	the different glands	the different glands	Projector	or surry grands	or surry grands	Anatomical
	and their locations	and their locations	Computer	Draw salivary	Draw salivary	Models
	WING WICH 10 CON 20115	WITH TO GUILT	Internet	glands	glands	1/10 00018
	2.3 Explain types of	Explain types of	Charts	S	Brazzas	
	saliva produced by each gland	saliva produced by each gland				
	2.4 Describe the	Explain the				
	composition of saliva	composition of saliva				
	2.5 Explain the factors that	Explain the factors				
	affect the composition	that affect the				
	of saliva	composition of saliva				
	2.6 Explain the functions	Explain the functions				
	of saliva e.g.:	of saliva e.g.:				
	 Lubrication 	Lubrication				
	 Mastication 	 Mastication 				
	• Speech	• Speech				

	• Digestive	• Digestive				
	• Thirst	Digestive Thirst				
	Anti-bacterial etc.	Anti-bacterial				
		etc.				
	al Objective 3.0: Understan			phorous metabolism	in Oral Health	
7-8	3.1 Describe calcium	Explain calcium	Textbooks			
	metabolism	metabolism	Whiteboard			
			Marker			
	3.2 Explain the uses of	Explain the uses of	Multimedia			
	calcium and	calcium and	Projector			
	phosphorous in the	phosphorous in the	Computer			
	body e.g.:	body e.g.:	Internet			
	 Skeleton 	 Skeleton 	Charts			
	 Muscle 	 Muscle 				
	 Action etc. 	• Action etc.				
	3.3 Describe the sources	Explain the sources				
	of calcium and	of calcium and				
	phosphorous to the	phosphorous to the				
	body e.g. diet and	body e.g. diet and				
	bones of the skeleton	bones of the skeleton.				
	0 01102 01 0110 21101001					
	3.4 Describe the	Explain the				
	absorption of calcium	absorption of calcium				
	and phosphorous from	and phosphorous				
	the intestine	from the intestine				
	the intestine	mom the mesune				
	3.5 Explain the factors	Explain the factors				
	that influences the	that influences the				
	absorption of calcium	absorption of calcium				
	absorption of calcium	absorption of carcium				

and phosphorous	and phosphorous		
from the intestine	from the intestine		
e.g,:	e.g.:		
Vitamin D	Vitamin D		
 Sunlight 	 Sunlight 		
 Other food 	Other food		
substances	substances		
3.6 State the distribution	Explain the		
calcium and	distribution calcium		
phosphorous in the	and phosphorous in		
body	the body		
3.7 State factors that	Explain factors that		
influence this	influence this		
distribution e.g.:	distribution e.g.:		
 Parathormone 	 Parathormone 		
• Calcium	 Calcium 		
phosphorous	phosphorous		
level blood	level blood		
3.8 State factors that	Explain factors that		
influences the	influences the		
excretion of	excretion of calcium		
calcium and	and phosphorous		
phosphorous from	from the kidney e.g.:		
the kidney e.g.:	• Vitamin D		
• Vitamin D	Parathormone		
• Parathormone	Blood levels		
 Blood levels in 	in calcium		

	calcium	phosphorous			
	phosphorous	Explain the theories			
	3.9 State the theories of	of calcification e.g.:			
	calcification e.g.	precipitation and			
	precipitation and	seeding theories, etc.			
	seeding theories,				
	etc.				
General	Objective 4.0: Understand	d the mechanisms of ma	stication and s	wallowing	
9-10	4.1 Define mastication	Explain mastication	Textbooks		
			Whiteboard		
	4.2 Outline the structures	Explain the structures	Marker		
	involved in	involved in	Multimedia		
	mastication e.g.:	mastication e.g.:	Projector		
	• Teeth	• Teeth	Computer		
	 Lips cheeks 	 Lips cheeks 	Internet		
	• Tongue	• Tongue	Charts		
	 Hard palate 	 Hard palate 			
	_	_			
	4.3 State the role of each	Explain the role of			
	structure in 4.2 above	each structure in 4.2			
	during mastication	above during			
		mastication			
	4.4 Explain the role of the	Explain the role of			
	different teeth during	the different teeth			
	mastication e.g.:	during mastication			
	 Incisors canines 	e.g.:			
	 Premolars 	 Incisors canines 			
	• Molars	 Premolars 			
		 Molars 			

	4.5 Explain incisors	Explain incisors				
	canines, premolars	canines, premolars				
	and molars	and molars				
	4.6 Define swallowing	Explain swallowing				
	4.7 Explain the	Explain the				
	mechanisms involved	mechanisms involved				
	in swallowing	in swallowing				
	4.0.75	T 1 1 1 100				
	4.8 Describe the different	Explain the different				
	stages of swallowing	stages of swallowing				
	4.9 Describe the voluntary	Describe the voluntary				
	and involuntary stages	and involuntary stages				
	in swallowing	in swallowing				
	4.10 Explain the reflex	Explain the reflex				
	4.10 Explain the reflex mechanisms involved	mechanisms involved				
	in swallowing	in swallowing				
Conorol	l Objective 5.0: Know the p	<u> </u>	tion and annr	ociation		
	· ·				0:1 4 1 4	G 14
11-13	5.1 Define taste sensation	Explain taste sensation		Test for taste	Guide students	Salt
			Whiteboard	sensation in the	to:	
	5.2 Describe location of	Explain location of	Marker	mouth	Test for taste	Sugar
	taste sensors (buds) in	taste sensors (buds)	Multimedia		sensation in the	
	the mouth	in the mouth	Projector	Draw and label the	mouth	Maggi
			Computer	tongue indicating		
	5.3 Explain types of taste	Explain types of taste	Internet	taste buds	Draw and label	Lime
	namely:	namely:	Charts		the tongue	
	• Sweet	• Sweet				Bitter Kola

• Bitter	• Bitter	indicating taste	Posters
• Salt	• Salt	bud	
• Sour	• Sour		Charts
• Umami	• Umami		
			Tongu
5.4 State the exact area	Explain the exact		Model
for sensing these	area for sensing these		
tastes on the tongue	tastes on the tongue		
namely:	namely:		
• The tips	• The tips		
 Back of tongue 	Back of		
 Lateral borders 	tongue		
	• Lateral		
	borders		
5.5 Describe the nervous	Explain the nervous		
apparent pathway for	apparent pathway for		
taste appreciation e.g.	taste appreciation e.g.		
chorda tympani	chorda tympani		
lingual nerve to the	lingual nerve to the		
brain	brain		
5.6 Explain factors that	Explain factors that		
influence appreciation	influence appreciation		
of taste e.g.:	of taste e.g.:		
 Food flavour 	 Food flavour 		
 Consistency 	 Consistency 		
 Conditioned 	 Conditioned 		
reflexes	reflexes		
• Smell	• Smell		

General	Objective 6.0: Understand	the mechanism and prod	cess of tooth en	ruption.	
14-15	6.1 Define tooth eruption	Explain tooth eruption	Textbooks		
			Whiteboard		
	6.2 Explain the mechanism	Explain the	Marker		
	of tooth eruption	mechanism of tooth	Multimedia		
		eruption	Projector		
	6.3 State the different	Explain the different	Computer		
	theories of tooth	theories of tooth	Internet		
	eruption	eruption	Charts		
	6.4 Discuss the arguments	Explain the arguments			
	for and against each	for and against each			
	theory in 6.3 above	theory in 6.3 above			
	6.5 State the nature of	Explain the nature of			
	eruption of each tooth	eruption of each tooth			

EVALUATION: C.A.: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Care and Maintenance of Dental COURSE CODE: DTH 123 CREDIT UNIT: 2						
Equipment/Instruments	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1						

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with the knowledge and skills of care and maintenance of equipment and instruments

- 1.0 Know the basic equipment and instruments used in the dental surgery
- 2.0 Know the calibration of the basic equipment and instruments used in the dental surgery
- 3.0 Know simple care and maintenance of hand instruments used in the dental surgery
- 4.0 Know simple care and maintenance of dental equipment

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY COURSE: Care and Maintenance of Dental Equipment/Instruments CONTACT HOURS: 2 THEORETICAL: 1 YEAR: I SEMESTER: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1

GOAL: This is course is designed to provide the students with the knowledge and skills of care and maintenance of equipment and instruments.

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

General Objectives 1.0 Know the basic equipment and instruments used in the dental surgery

THEORETICAL CONTENT P			PRACTICAL CO	ONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Learning	Activities	
				Outcome		
	1.1 Differentiate between	Explain the	TextbooksW		Guide students	Dental units
1-3	equipment and	difference between	hiteboardMar		to:	Cabinets
	instruments	equipment and	ker	Identify basic	Identify basic	Dental chair
		instruments	Multimedia	equipment and	equipment and	Spot lamp
	1.2 Explain basic		Projector	instruments used	instruments	Compressor
	equipment and	Explain basic	Computer	in dental surgery	used in dental	Sterilizers
	instruments used in	equipment and	Internet		surgery	Hand-pieces
	dental surgery e.g.:	instruments used in	Charts			
	 Dental units 	dental surgery e.g.:		Demonstrate the	Demonstrate	
	 Cabinets 	 Dental units 		use of the	the use of the	
	 Dental chair 	 Cabinets 		equipment	equipment	
	Spot lamp	 Dental chair 		identified above	identified	
	 Compressor 	 Spot lamp 			above	
	 Sterilizers 	 Compressor 				
	• Handpieces, etc.	 Sterilizers 				

		Handpieces,		Demonstrate the	Demonstrate	
	1.3 Explain the uses of the	etc.		working	the working	
	equipment and	Explain the uses of		mechanism of	mechanism of	
	instruments mentioned	the equipment and		the equipment	the equipment	
	in 1.2 above	instruments		identified above	identified above	
		mentioned in 1.2				
	1.4 Describe the working	above				
	mechanism of the					
	equipment and	Explain the working				
	instrument identified in	-				
	1.2 above	equipment and				
		instrument and				
		identified in 1.2				
		above				
Genera	Objective 2.0: Know the c	calibration of the basic ed	quipment and in	nstruments used in t	he dental surgery	
4-6	2.1 Explain dental	Explain dental	TextbooksW	Demonstrate the	Guide students	Dental Units
	equipment and	equipment and	hiteboardMar	calibration of	to:	
	instruments into	instruments into	ker	dental surgery	Demonstrate the	Autoclave
	calibrated and non-	calibrated and non-	Multimedia	equipment and	calibration of	
	calibrated ones	calibrated ones	Projector	instruments	dental surgery	Ultrasonic
			Computer		equipment and	Scalers
	2.2 Describe the units of	Explain the units of	Internet	Adjust the	instruments	
	calibration of dental	calibration of dental	Charts	calibration of		Amalgamator
	surgery equipment	surgery equipment		dental surgery	Adjust the	
	and instruments	and instruments		equipment and	calibration of	Automated
				instrument	dental surgery	Mixers
	2.3 Explain the calibration	Explain the calibration			equipment and	
	of dental surgery	of dental surgery			instrument	Weighing
	equipment and	equipment and				balance

	instrument where	instrument where				
	necessary	necessary				
Gener	al Objective 3.0 Know simpl	e care and maintenance	of hand instrun	nents used in the der	ntal surgery	
General 7-9	3.1 Explain the hand instruments used in the dental surgery e.g.: • Scalers • Dental probes • Port polisher etc. 3.2 Explain simple maintenance of the hand tools identified in 3.1 above e.g.: • Sharpening • Lubrication etc. 3.3 State the items required for sharpening of hand instruments e.g.: • Arkansas stone	Explain the hand instruments used in the dental surgery e.g.: Scalers Dental probes Port polisher etc. Explain simple maintenance of the hand tools identified in 3.1 above e.g.: Sharpening Lubrication etc. Explain the items required for sharpening of hand instruments e.g.: Arkansas	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Multimedia Projector Computer Internet Charts	Demonstrate the simple maintenance of hand tools Identify the items required for sharpening of hand instruments Demonstrate how to Sharpen dental instruments Demonstrating how to clean and sterilize hand instruments	Guide students to: Demonstrate the simple maintenance of hand tools Identify the items required for sharpening of hand instruments Demonstrate how to Sharpen dental instruments Demonstrating how to clean and sterilize	Dental units Cabinets Dental chair Spot lamp Compressor Sterilizers Hand-pieces Arkansas stone Lubricating oil
	Lubricating oil etc.	stone • Lubricating oil etc.			hand instruments	
	3.4 Explain the principles	Explain the principles				
	of sharpening hand	of sharpening hand				

	instruments e.g.:	instruments e.g.:				
	 Lubrication of 	 Lubrication of 				
	the Arkansas	the Arkansas				
	stone	stone				
	• The firm grip of	 The firm grip 				
	the Arkansas	of the Arkansas				
	stone etc.	stone etc.				
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Know simp	ole care and maintenance	of dental equi	pment		
10-12	4.1 Outline dental	Explain dental	Textbooks	Demonstrate	Guide students	Dental units
	equipment for dental	equipment for dental	Whiteboard	how to operate	to:	
	surgery	surgery	Marker	the equipment in	Demonstrate	Cabinets
			Multimedia	dental surgery	how to operate	
	4.2 Describe the	Explain the	Projector		the equipment in	Dental chair
	component of the	component of the	Computer	Demonstrate the	dental surgery	
	equipment mention in	equipment mention in	Internet	simple		Spot lamp
	4.1 above	4.1 above	Charts	maintenance of	Demonstrate	
				the equipment in	the simple	Compressor
	4.3 Explain simple	Explain simple		dental surgery	maintenance of	
	maintenance of the	maintenance of the			the equipment	Sterilizers
	equipment in 4.1 above	equipment in 4.1			in dental	
	e.g.:	above e.g.:			surgery	Hand-pieces
	Lubricating	 Lubricating 				_
	• Cleaning etc.	• Cleaning etc.				Arkansas
		grouning coor				stone
						Lubricating
						oil

EVALUATION C.A.

40%

EXAMINATION 60%

PROGRAM	PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE:	General Pathology I	COURSE CODE: DTH 124	CREDIT UNIT: 2			
		CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2			
YEAR: I	SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0			

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the student with the knowledge of pathological processes

- 1.0 Understand medical terms in pathology
- 2.0 Understand inflammation.
- 3.0 Understand the pathological conditions that exist in medicine
- 4.0 Understand the physical factors which causes injuries to the body.
- 5.0 Understand the biochemical processes that cause disease in the body.

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY **COURSE CODE: DTH 124 COURSE:** General Pathology I **CREDIT UNIT: 2 CONTACT HOURS:** 2 **THEORETICAL: 2** SEMESTER: II YEAR: I **PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: GOAL:** This course is designed to equip the student with the knowledge of pathological processes **COURSE SPECIFICATION:** THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL **General Objectives** 1.0: Understand medical terms in pathology PRACTICAL CONTENT THEORETICAL CONTENT Teacher's Specific Learning Specific Learning Teacher's Week Resources Resources Outcome Activities Outcome Activities 1.1 Define Medicine **Explain Medicine** Textbooks Whiteboard 1-3 1.2 Define Pathology, Explain Pathology, Marker physical signs and physical signs and Multimedia Projector symptoms symptoms. Computer 1.3 Define Aetiology **Explain Aetiology** Internet Charts 1.4 List the divisions of Explain the divisions aetiology and their of aetiology and their causative agents causative agents 1.5 Define the following Explain the following pathological terms: pathological terms: Complication • Complication Sequela, Sequela Diagnosis Diagnosis

Differential

Differential

	diagnosis	diagnosis				
	 Prognosis 	 Prognosis 				
	 Prophylaxis 	 Prophylaxis. 				
Genera	al Objective 2.0: Understan	d Inflammation			1	1
4-6	2.1 Define Inflammation	Explain Inflammation	Textbooks			
			Whiteboard			
	2.2 Describe the types of	Explain the types of	Marker			
	inflammations i.e.	inflammations i.e.	Multimedia			
	acute and chronic	acute and chronic	Projector			
			Computer			
	2.3 Explain vasodilation	Explain vasodilation	Internet			
			Charts			
	2.4 Describe the signs	Explain the signs and				
	and symptoms of	symptoms of				
	inflammation	inflammation				
	2.5.5. 1: 41.1:00	T 1 ' 41 1'CC 4				
	2.5 Explain the different	Explain the different				
	stages of inflammation	stages of inflammation				
	2.6 Explain the process of	Explain the process of				
	inflammatory changes	inflammatory changes				
Genera	al Objective 3.0: Understand	the pathological conditi	ons that exist in	n medicine	1	l
7-9	3.1 Define Abscess	Explain Abscess	Textbooks			
			Whiteboard			
	3.2 Explain abscess	Explain abscess	Marker			
	formation	formation	Multimedia			
			Projector			
	3.3 Define the following	Explain the following	Computer			
	pathological	pathological	Internet			
	conditions:	conditions:	Charts			

	• Cellulitis	• Cellulitis			
	• Empyema	• Empyema			
	Pyaemia	Pyaemia			
	Bacteremia	Bacteremia			
	Septicemia	 Septicemia 			
	 Lymphangitis 	 Lymphangitis 			
	Lymphadenitis	 Lymphadenitis 			
	Ulcer	• Ulcer			
	• Gangrene	• Gangrene			
	• Sequestrum	Sequestrum			
	• Sinus	• Sinus			
	Necrosis	Necrosis			
	110010515	TACCIOSIS			
	3.4 Explain the formations	Explain the formations			
	of the conditions	of the conditions			
	defined in 3.3 above	defined in 3.3 above			
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Understand	the physical factors whic	h causes injuri	es to the body	
10-12	4.1 Explain the physical	Explain the physical	Textbooks	-	
	factors which cause	factors which cause	Whiteboard		
	injuries to the body:	injuries to the body:	Marker		
	 Mechanical 	 Mechanical 	Multimedia		
	• Thermal	 Thermal 	Projector		
	• Electrical etc.	• Electrical etc.	Computer		
			Internet		
		Explain the	Charts		
	4.2 Differentiate between	differences between			
	the different types of	the different types of			
	injuries on 4.1 above	injuries on 4.1 above			

	4.3 Explain wound	Explain wound			
	healing	healing			
Genera	l Objective 5.0: Understand	the biochemical processe	s that cause dis	sease in the body	
13-14	5.1 Define biochemical	Define biochemical	Textbooks		
	processes	processes	Whiteboard		
			Marker		
	5.2 List the biochemical	Explain the	Multimedia		
	processes that causes	biochemical processes	Projector		
	diseases	that causes diseases	Computer		
			Internet		
	5.3 Explain the effects of	Explain the effects of	Charts		
	poisonous substances	poisonous substances			
	on harmful foreign	on harmful foreign			
	bodies on the human	bodies on the human			
	body	body			
	5.4 Explain the roles of	Explain the roles of			
	dietary or nutritional	dietary or nutritional			
	disorders such as	disorders such as			
	deficiency diseases	deficiency diseases			
	and malnutrition	and malnutrition			
	5.5 Explain the disorders	Explain the disorders of			
	of the endocrine glands	•			
	and metabolism.	and metabolism.			

EVALUATION: C.A.: 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE: Human Anatomy and Physiology II	COURSE CODE: DTH 125	CREDIT UNIT: 2			
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1			
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 112	PRACTICAL: 1			

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with the knowledge of human body systems

- 1.0 Know the respiratory system
- 2.0 Know the digestive system
- 3.0 Know the reproductive system
- 4.0 Know the endocrine system
- 5.0 Know the nervous system

COURS	SE: Human Anatomy A	nd Physiology II	COURSE COI	DE: DTH 125	CREDIT UNIT:	2
		(CONTACT H	OURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II	I	PRE-REQUIS	ITE: DTH 112	PRACTICAL:	1
GOAL:	This course is designed to	provide students with the	knowledge of	human body systems	8	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: TI	HEORETICAL AND PRA	ACTICAL			
Genera	l Objectives 1.0: Know th	ne respiratory system				
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define respiration	Explain respiration	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Posters
1-4			Whiteboard	Draw and label the	Draw and label	
	1.2 List types of	Explain types of	Marker	respiratory system	the respiratory	Anatomical
	respiration	respiration	Multimedia		system	Models
			Projector			
	1.3 List the organs of	Explain the organs of	Computer	Identify organs of	Identify organs of	
	respiration (both	respiration (both	Internet	respiration	respiration	
	internal and	internal and external)	Atlas			
	external)		Posters			
			Charts			
	1.4 Describe the	Explain the respiratory				
	respiratory system	system				
	1.5 Describe the	Explain the mechanism				
	mechanism of	of respiration				
		- T			1	

respiration

	1.6 Explain the function of each of the organs of respiration 1.7 Explain the purpose	Explain the function of each of the organs of respiration Explain the purpose of				
	of respiration 1.8 Explain the conditions that determine frequency in respiration	Explain the conditions that determine frequency in respiration				
Genera	l Objective 2.0: Know the	digestive system				
5-8	2.1 Define digestion2.2 Describe the	Explain digestive Explain the digestion	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker	Draw and label the alimentary canal	Guide students to: Draw and label the alimentary	Posters Anatomical
	digestive system	system	Multimedia Projector		canal	Models
	2.3 List the organs of digestion	Explain the organs of digestion	Computer Internet Posters	Draw and label the mouth, showing the oral part of the	Draw and label the mouth, showing the oral	
	2.4 List the accessory organs of digestion (liver, bile ducts, gall bladder, pancreas)	Explain the accessory organs of digestion (liver, bile ducts, gall bladder, pancreas)	Atlas Charts	phyarynx.	part of the phyarynx.	
	2.5 Describe the mechanism of digestion	Explain the mechanism of digestion				

	2.6 State the purpose of digestion	Explain the purpose of digestion				
	2.7 Describe the functions of the organs of the digestive system	Explain the functions of the organs of the digestive system				
	2.8 List the glands of the digestive system	Explain the glands of the digestive system				
	2.9 Explain the mouth, showing the oral part of the phyarynx	Explain the mouth, showing the oral part of the phyarynx				
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Know the	reproductive system			l	
9-11	3.1 Describe the components of the male and female reproductive system	Explain the components of the male and female reproductive system	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Multimedia Projector	Draw and label urogenital system	Guide students to: Draw and label urogenital system	Posters Anatomical Models
	3.2 Explain the functions of the different components of the male and female reproductive system	Explain the functions of the different components of the male and female reproductive system	Computer Internet Atlas Posters Charts			
	3.3 Explain the hormonal cycle and menstruation in female	Explain the hormonal cycle and menstruation in female				

General	Objective 4.0: Know the	e endocrine system				
12-13	4.1 Describe the	Explain the endocrine	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Posters
	endocrine system	system	Whiteboard	Draw and label the	Draw and label	
			Marker	glands	the glands	Anatomical
	4.2 List the glands of the	Explain the glands of	Multimedia			Models
	endocrine system	the endocrine system	Projector			
			Computer			
	4.3 Explain the	Explain the functions	Internet			
	functions of the	of the glands of the	Atlas			
	glands of the	endocrine system	Posters			
	endocrine system	(primary and	Charts			
	(primary and	secondary)				
	secondary)					
	4.4 Define hormone	Explain hormone				
	4.4 Define normone	Explain normone				
	4.5 List the various	Explain the various				
	types of hormones	types of hormones				
	4.6 State the functions	Explain the functions				
	of each type of	of each type of				
	hormone	hormone				
General	Objective 5.0: Know the	nervous system				
14-15	5.1 Describe the	Explain the structure	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Posters
	structure of the	of the nervous system	Whiteboard	Draw and label a	Draw and label a	Anatomical
	nervous system		Marker	typical nerve cell	typical nerve cell	Models
			Multimedia			
	5.2 State the types of the	Explain the types of	Projector	Examine and draw	Examine and	
	nervous system:	the nervous system:	Computer	sections from	draw sections	
			Internet		from various	

• Central nervous system	a Central nervous system	Atlas Posters Charts	various parts of the nervous system	parts of the nervous system
 Peripheral nervous system The autonomic nervous system 	 Peripheral nervous system The autonomic nervous system 	Charts	Draw sections from various parts of the nervous system	Draw sections from various parts of the nervous system
 5.3 List parts of the: Central nervous system Peripheral nervous system Autonomic nervous system 	 Explain parts of the: Central nervous system Peripheral nervous system Autonomic nervous system 			
5.4 Define:Motor nerveSensory nerve	Explain: • Motor nerve • Sensory nerve			
5.5 Explain the functions of the nervous system	Explain the functions of the nervous system			
5.6 Explain impulse generation	Explain impulse generation			
5.7 Describe receptor nerves, phasic and tonic receptors	Explain receptor nerves, phasic and tonic receptors			

control of receptor	Explain synaptic control of receptor nerves		
transmission -	Explain synaptic transmission - electric and chemical		
features of chemical	Explain general features of chemical synaptic transmission		
integration,	Explain integration, summation and facilitation		

EVALAUTION: C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE: Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving II	COURSE CODE: DTH 126	CREDIT UNIT: 2			
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1			
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 111	PRACTICAL: 1			

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge of tooth morphology and skills of tooth carving

- 1.0 Know the respiratory system
- 2.0 Know the design for deciduous and permanent human dentition
- 3.0 Know tooth carving to scale
- 4.0 Know occlusion and articulation in Tooth Carving

COURS	SE: Tooth Morphology and	Tooth Carving II	COURSE CO	DE: DTH 126	CREDIT UNIT:	2
			CONTACT U	VNIT: 2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II		PRE-REQUIS	SITE: DTH 111	PRACTICAL:	1
GOAL:	This course is designed to	equip students with th	e knowledge of	tooth morphology an	d skills of tooth carvi	ng
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: TH	EORETICAL AND P	RACTICAL			
Genera	l Objectives 1.0: Know the	respiratory system				
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CO	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-4	 1.1 Define Tooth carving 1.2 Outline Carving Instruments such as: Lecron Carver Wax Knife Calliper 1.3 Explain carving 	Explain Tooth carving Explain Carving Instruments such as: • Lecron Carver • Wax Knife • Calliper Explain carving	Projector Internet Textbooks Journals Computer Whiteboard Marker	Identify Carving Instruments Demonstrate the proper Handling and Maintenance of Instruments Demonstrate the material preparation and	Guide Students to: Identify Carving Instruments Demonstrate the proper Handling and Maintenance of Instruments Demonstrate the material	Carving Wax Teeth Sets Calliper Lecron Carver
	materials:	materials:	S.	Demonstrate the anatomical accuracy in Carving	Preparation and Selection Demonstrate the anatomical accuracy in Carving	Vernier Calliper

	Maintenance of	Maintenance of		Demonstrate		
	Instruments	Instruments		aesthetic and	Demonstrate	
				functional	aesthetic and	
	1.5 Describe the Material	Explain the material		detailing	functional	
	Preparation and	preparation and			detailing	
	Selection.	selection				
	1.6 Describe the	Explain the				
	anatomical accuracy	anatomical accuracy				
	in Carving	in Carving				
	C	C				
	1.7 Describe aesthetic	Explain aesthetic				
	and functional	and functional				
	detailing.	detailing				
General	Objective 2.0: Know the o	lesign for deciduous and	d permanent h	uman dentition		
5-8	2.1 Explain the difference	Explain the	Textbooks		Guild students to:	Carving
	between deciduous	difference between	Whiteboard	Identify the	Identify difference	Instruments
	and permanent teeth	deciduous and	Marker	difference between	between deciduous	
		permanent teeth	Multimedia	deciduous and	and permanent	Carving
			Projector	permanent teeth	teeth based on:	Wax
	2.2 Explain the anatomical	Explain the	Computer	based on:	 Unique 	
	features of deciduous	anatomical features	Internet	 Unique 	anatomical	Teeth Sets
	and permanent teeth	of deciduous and	Posters	anatomical	features	
		permanent teeth	Charts	features	• Size	Calliper
				• Size	 Shape 	
	2.3 Describe the	Explain the		 Shape 	 Eruption 	POP
	characteristics of each	characteristics of each		 Eruption 	patterns	
	type of tooth within	type of tooth within		patterns		
	both dentitions	both dentitions			Identify specific	
					characteristics of	

	2.4 Describe Carving	Explain Carving		Identify specific	each type of tooth	
	procedures of teeth	procedures of teeth		characteristics of	within both	
	1	1		each type of tooth	dentitions	
				within both	(incisors, canines,	
				dentitions	molars) to	
				(incisors, canines,	understand their	
				molars) to	functional and	
				understand their	developmental	
				functional and	roles	
				developmental		
				roles		
					Identify Carving	
				Identify Carving	procedures of teeth	
				procedures of teeth		
General	Objective 3.0: Know tootl	n carving to scale				
9-11	4.1 List measuring tools	Explain measuring	Textbooks	Demonstrate the	Guide students to:	Carving
	for tooth carving	tools for tooth	Whiteboard	ability to visualize	Demonstrate the	Instruments
		carving	Marker	and replicate the	ability to visualize	
			Multimedia	dimensions of each	and replicate the	Carving
	4.2 Describe the	Explain the	Projector	tooth in proportion	dimensions of each	Wax
	application of	application of	Computer	to its natural size,	tooth in proportion	
	measurement tools for	measurement tools	Internet	ensuring accurate	to its natural size,	Teeth Sets
	accuracy	for accuracy	Posters	scaling	ensuring accurate	
			Charts		scaling	Calliper
	4.3 Describe tooth	Explain tooth		Demonstrate the		
	anatomy at various	anatomy at Various		dental measurement	Demonstrate the	
	Scales	Scales		tools to ensure that	dental measurement	
				carved teeth match	tools to ensure that	
				the desired	carved teeth match	
				dimensions and	the desired	

				maintain anatomical	dimensions and	
				accuracy	maintain anatomical	
					accuracy	
				Demonstrate		
				measurement	Demonstrate	
				techniques to	measurement	
				maintain scale	techniques to	
				across multiple	maintain scale	
				carvings,	across multiple	
				understanding the	carvings,	
				importance of	understanding the	
				symmetry and	importance of	
				proportionality	symmetry and	
					proportionality	
				Demonstrate the		
				Tooth anatomy at	Demonstrate the	
				Various Scale	Tooth anatomy at	
					Various Scales	
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Know occlu	sion and articulation in	Tooth Carvin	g		
12-13	4.1 Explain Occlusal	Explain Occlusal	Textbooks	Identify key occlusa	Guide students to:	Carving
	Landmarks	Landmarks	Whiteboard	landmarks on each	Identify key	Instruments
			Marker	type of tooth (e.g.,	occlusal landmarks	
	4.2 Describe the	Explain the	Multimedia	molars, premolars)	on each type of	Carving
	Assessment of Wear	Assessment of Wear	Projector	Identify roles of the	tooth (e.g., molars,	Wax
	Patterns and Occlusion	Patterns and	Computer	above in occlusion	premolars)	
		Occlusion	Internet		Identify roles of	Teeth Sets
			Posters		the above in	
	4.3 Explain the use of	Explain the use of	Charts	Demonstrate	occlusion.	Calliper
	articulator	articulator		carving of occlusal		
				surfaces to reflect		

4.4 Explain Application	Explain Application	natural occlusal	Demonstrate	
of Occlusal Concepts	of Occlusal	relationships	carving of occlusal	
to Clinical Scenarios	Concepts to Clinical		surfaces to reflect	
	Scenarios	Demonstrate	natural occlusal	
		carving of occlusal	relationships	
		anatomy that		
		allows for smooth	Demonstrate	
		articulation	carving of occlusal	
		without	anatomy that	
		interference,	allows for smooth	
		simulating natural	articulation	
		bite and	without	
		movement.	interference,	
			simulating natural	
		Demonstrate the	bite and	
		Application of	movement.	
		Occlusal Concepts		
		to Clinical	Demonstrate the	
		Scenarios	Application of	
			Occlusal Concepts	
			to Clinical	
			Scenarios	

EVALAUTION: C.A: 40%

EAR: I SEMESTER: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTOLL: This course is designed to provide student with the knowledge and skills of cleaning the moute ENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to: Understand oral physiotherapy and mechanism in cleaning the mouth Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation	ΓUNIT:			
DAL: This course is designed to provide student with the knowledge and skills of cleaning the mountain the mountain the students should be able to: Understand oral physiotherapy and mechanism in cleaning the mouth Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation	RETICAL:			
ENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to: Understand oral physiotherapy and mechanism in cleaning the mouth Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation	ICAL:			
Understand oral physiotherapy and mechanism in cleaning the mouth Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation	:h			
Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know the types of tooth-brushes Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know the tooth brushing methods Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know the composition of dentifrice Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know inter-dental agents for the teeth Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation				
Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation	Know inter-dental agents for the teeth			
e e	Know the traditional methods of cleaning the teeth			
Know agents for mouth wash	Know the effects of mouth rinsing and irrigation			
	Know agents for mouth wash			
Know problems associated with oral hygiene				

COURS	SE: Oral Hygiene	COU	RSE CODE: DT	H 127	CRI	EDIT UNIT:	3
		CON	TACT HOURS:	3	THI	EORETICAL:	2
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II	PRE	REQUISITE:		PRA	ACTICAL:	1
GOAL:	This course is designed to p	provide students with	the knowledge and	skill of clean	ing the i	nouth	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THI	EORETICAL AND P	RACTICAL				
General	l Objectives 1.0: Understar	nd oral physiotherapy	and mechanism in	cleaning the	mouth		
THEOF	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICA	AL CON	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activitie	s Resources	Specific Le	arning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome		Activities	
	1.1 Define oral	Explain oral	Projector				
1	physiotherapy	physiotherapy	Internet				
1			Textbooks				
	1.2 State the objectives of	Explain the objectiv	es o Journals				
	oral physiotherapy	physiotherapy	Computer				
			Whiteboard				
	1.3 Describe	Explain physiothera	py Marker				
	physiotherapy	cleansing mechanism	ns Charts				
	cleansing mechanisms	e.g.					
	e.g.:	 Tooth brushi 	ng				
	 Tooth brushing 	 Natural meth 	od				
	 Natural method 	 Traditional 					
	 Traditional 	method etc.					
	method etc.						
	1.4 Define gingivae	Explain gingivae					
	1 55.,			1		i .	i

	1.5 State the benefits of gingivae (gum) massage	Explain the benefits of gingivae (gum) massage				
General (Objective 2.0: Know the ty	pes of tooth-brushes				
2-3 2 2	2.1 Define Tooth-brush 2.2 Explain types of tooth-brushes: • Manual • Electric • Smart etc. 2.3 Explain the characteristics of a toothbrush including: • Its Handle • Head • Bristles 2.4 Explain the preferred brushing plane for a toothbrush 2.5 Describe the care of the toothbrush	Explain Tooth-brush Explain types of tooth-brushes:	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Multimedia Projector Computer Internet Posters Charts	Identify types of toothbrushes Identify the plane of tooth brushing using dental model Identify the properties of natural and nylon bristles for toothbrushes. e.g.: • Hard • Medium • Soft Demonstrate how to care for toothbrush	Guide students to: Identify types of toothbrushes Identify the plane of tooth brushing using dental model Identify the properties of natural and nylon bristles for toothbrushes. e.g.: • Hard • Medium • Soft Demonstrate how to care for toothbrush	Manual tooth-brush Electronic tooth-brush Denture brush Mouth (Dental) model Cup Brush holder

1-5	3.1 Describe the tooth	Explain the tooth	Textbooks	Demonstrate the	Guide students	Mouth
	brushing methods	brushing methods	Whiteboard	tooth brushing	to:	(Dental)
	 e.g.: Press-roll-technique Modified stillman's Bass 	e.g.: • Press-roll- technique • Modified stillman's • Bass	Marker Multimedia Projector Computer Internet Posters Charts	methods Identify areas that require emphasis during tooth brushing	Demonstrate the tooth brushing methods Identify areas that require emphasis during	Brushes
	 Charters Vertical or horizontal Electronic toothbrush technique etc. 	 Charters Vertical or horizontal Electronic toothbrush technique etc. 		Create a tooth brush album		
	3.2 Differentiate between the methods listed in 3.1 above in tooth brushing	Explain different methods listed in 3.1 above in tooth brushing				
	3.3 Highlight the advantages and disadvantages of each method listed in 3.1 above	Explain the advantages and disadvantages of each method listed in 3.1 above				
	3.4 Describe areas that require emphasis during tooth brushing	Explain areas that require emphasis during tooth brushing				

	 3.5 Explain the effects of improper tooth brushing 3.6 Explain the corrective measures to adopt in solving problems identified in 3.5 above 	Explain the effects of improper tooth brushing Explain the corrective measures to adopt in solving problems identified in 3.5 above				
Gener	ral Objective 4.0: Know the	composition of dentifrice	ı	•	1	
6-7	4.1 Define dentifrice4.2 List types of dentifrice	Explain dentifrice Explain types of dentifrice	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Multimedia	Identify the composition of dentifrices	Guide students to: Identify the composition of	Solvents Detergent
			Projector	Create a dentifrice	dentifrices e.g:	Fillers
	4.3 List the composition of the dentifrice	Explain the composition of the dentifrice	Computer Internet Posters Charts	album	Create a dentifrice album	Abrasives Flavour
	 4.4 Describe the composition of dentifrices e.g.: Abrasive solvent Detergent Fillers Flavouring Chemical additives etc. 	Explain the composition of dentifrices e.g.: • Abrasive solvent • Detergent • Fillers • Flavouring • Chemical additives etc.				Chemical addictive Brushes

	4.5 List the uses of the	Explain the uses of the				
	components identified	components identified				
	in 4.4 above	in 3.4 above				
Genera	General Objective 5.0: Know inter-dental agents for the teetl				l	
8-9	5.1 Explain inter-dental	Explain inter-dental	Whiteboard		Guide students	Wood-
	agents e.g.:	cleaning agents e.g.:	Marker		to:	points
	 Wood-points 	 Wood-points 	Computer	Identify inter-	Identify inter-	
	 Interdens 	 Interdens 	Internet	dental teeth	dental teeth	Interdens
	 Floss silk 	 Floss silk 	Chart	cleaning agents	cleaning agents	
	 Port polishers 	 Port polishers 	Projectors			Floss silk
	 Polishing strip 	 Polishing 	Journals	Demonstrate how	Demonstrate	
	etc.	strip etc.	Textbooks	to use inter-dental	how to use	Port
			Pictorials	teeth cleaning	inter-dental	polishers
	5.2 Describe uses of	Explain uses of	Visual Aids	agents	teeth cleaning	
	cleaning agents in 5.1	cleaning agents in 5.1			agents	Polishing
	above	above				strip
						Mouth
	5.3 State the advantages	Explain the				Model
	and disadvantages of	advantages and				Wiodei
	the agents in 5.1	disadvantages of the				
	above	agents in 5.1 above				
	l Objective 6.0: Know the tr			T1 (C (1		l cı
10-11	6.1 Describe the	Explain the traditional	Whiteboard	Identify the	Guide students	Chewing
	traditional methods of	methods of tooth	Marker	traditional method	to:	C4: -1
	tooth cleaning e.g.:	cleaning e.g.:	Computer Internet	of tooth cleaning	Identify the	Sticks
	• Chewing	• Chewing	Chart	Create an album	Identify the traditional	Charcoal
	Sticks	Sticks			method of	Charcoai
	• Charcoal	• Charcoal	Projectors Journals	for types of chewing sticks	tooth cleaning	Ashes
	• Ashes	• Ashes	Textbooks	chewing sucks	toom cleaning	Asiles
	Broken Plates	Broken Plates	Textbooks			

	• Finger	• Finger	Pictorials		Create an	Broken
	 Fine Sand 	Fine Sand	Visual Aids		album for	plates
	• Salt etc.	• Salt etc.			types of	
		~ 			chewing sticks	Finger
	6.2 Outline the	Explain the				
	advantages and	advantages and				Fine sand
	disadvantages of the	disadvantages of the				
	traditional cleaning	traditional cleaning				Salt
	agents	agents				
	6.3 Explain the	Explain the				
	acceptable traditional	acceptable traditional				
	cleaning agents	cleaning agents				
Genera	al Objective 7.0: Know the e	0 0	and oral irrigation	on		
12-13	7.1 Define mouth rinsing	Explain mouth rinsing	Whiteboard	Identify the devices	Guide students	Enema
	β		Marker	used for oral	to:	
	7.2 Define oral irrigation	Explain oral irrigation	Computer	irrigation		Hunt
			Internet		Identify the	Syringe
	7.3 Explain the device	Explain the device	Chart		devices used	Water
	used for oral irrigation	used for oral irrigation	Projectors		for oral	flossier
			Journals	Demonstrate	irrigation	Hossiei
	7.4 Explain the objective	Explain the objective	Textbooks	mouth rinsing and		Disposable
	for mouth rinsing and	for mouth rinsing and	Pictorials	oral irrigation.	Demonstrate	syringe
	oral irrigation	oral irrigation.	Visual Aids		mouth rinsing	
					and oral	Water chips
	7.5 Differentiate between	Explain the			irrigation.	
	mouth rinsing and oral	differences between			miganon.	
	irrigation	mouth rinsing and				
		oral irrigation				

	7.6 State indications for	Explain indications				
	mouth rinsing and oral	for mouth rinsing and				
	irrigation	oral irrigation				
Gene	ral Objective 8.0: Know agent	ts for mouth wash			•	•
General 14	8.1 Define mouth wash 8.2 Define mouth wash agents 8.3 List types of mouth wash agents: • Anti-bacterial agents • Oxygenating agents • Deodorising agents • Anodynes etc. 8.4 Explain the use of mouth wash agents 8.5 Explain advantages and disadvantages of mouth wash agents	Explain mouth wash agents Explain types of mouth wash agents: • Anti-bacterial agents • Oxygenating agents • Astringents • Deodorising agents • Anodynes etc. Explain the use of mouth wash agents Explain advantages and	Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Chart Projectors Journals Textbooks Pictorials Visual Aids	Identify mouth wash agents Identify disclosing agents	Guide students to: Identify mouth wash agents Identify disclosing agents	Mouth wash agents
	8.6 Define disclosing agent	Explain disclosing agent				
	8.7 State the purposes of a					
	disclosing agent.	of a disclosing agent				

Genera	al Objective 9.0: Know prob	lems associated with oral	hygiene			
15	 9.1 Explain common oral hygiene related problems e.g.: Mouth odour Gum bleeding Caries Sensitivity Oral ulcerations etc. 9.2 Explain the causes for 9.1 above 9.3 List oral hygiene aids to solve 9.2 above 	Explain common oral hygiene related problems e.g.: • Mouth odour • Gum bleeding • Caries • Sensitivity • Oral ulcerations etc. Explain the causes for 9.1 above Explain oral hygiene aids to solve 9.2 above	Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Chart Projectors Journals Textbooks Pictorials Visual Aids	Identify common oral hygiene related problems	Guide students to: Identify common oral hygiene related problems	Visual Aid Charts

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

YEAR II

SEMESTER I

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY					
COURSE: Oral Anatomy COURSE CODE: DTH 211 CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1			
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1			

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the student with knowledge and skills of the anatomy of oral cavity

- 1.0 Know embryology of Face and Oral structures
- 2.0 Know the stages of tooth formation
- 3.0 Understand the group of the deciduous dentition
- 4.0 Understand the various attachments of teeth
- 5.0 Understand the various disorders of some tooth structures
- 6.0 Understand the structure and development of the pulp
- 7.0 Understand the gingivae and the eruption process of the teeth
- 8.0 Know the Oral cavity

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY COURSE: Oral Anatomy COURSE CODE: DTH 211 CREDIT UNIT: 2 CONTACT HOURS: 2 THEORETICAL: 1 YEAR: II SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1

COURSE SPECIFIFCATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the student with knowledge and skills of the anatomy of oral cavity

General Objective 1.0: Know embryology of Face and Oral structure

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-3	1.4 Describe the development of 1.3 above	Explain embryology Explain the stages of the development of facial structure Explain the various oral structure Explain the stages of the development of 1.3 above Explain foetus formation	Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Chart Projectors Journals Textbooks Pictorials Visual Aids	stages of the development of facial structure Draw the transverse section of a tooth	Draw and label the stages of the development of	

					section of the	
					foetus formation	
General	Objective 2.0: Know the stage	es of tooth formation	I			1
4-5	2.1 Define Odontogenesis	Explain	Whiteboard	Draw the stages in	Guide students to:	Microscope
		Odontogenesis	Marker	2.2 above	Draw the stages in	
			Computer		2.2 above	Slides
	2.2 Outline the stages of tooth	Explain the stages of	Internet	Draw the cross-		
	formation	tooth formation	Chart	sectional tissues of	Draw the cross-	Reagents
			Projectors	the teeth	sectional tissues of	
	2.3 Describe the stages in 2.2	Explain the stages in	Journals		the teeth	
	above	2.2 above	Textbooks	Observe the stages		
			Pictorials	in 2.1, 2.4, 2.5 and	Observe the stages	
	2.4 Describe the tissues of the	Explain the tissues of	Visual Aids	2.6	in 2.1, 2.4, 2.5 and	
	teeth	the teeth			2.6	
	2.5 Describe the enamel	Explain the enamel				
	organ	organ				
	2.6 Describe the epithelial	Explain the epithelial				
	tissues of the enamel	tissues of the enamel				
	organ	organ				
General	Objective 3.0: Understand the	group of the deciduo	us dentition			
6	3.1 Define deciduous	Explain deciduous	Whiteboard			
	dentition	dentition	Marker			
			Computer			
	3.2 Describe the types of	Explain the types of	Internet			
	teeth in deciduous	teeth in deciduous	Chart			
	dentition	dentition	Projectors			
			Journals			
	3.3 Describe the functions of	Explain the functions	Textbooks			

	above 3.4 Describe the deciduous dental formula	of each type of teeth in 3.2 above Explain the deciduous dental formula Explain the eruption	Pictorials Visual Aids		
	dates and sequence	dates and sequence			
General	Objective 4.0: Understand the	various attachments o	f teeth		
7		Explain teeth attachment	Whiteboard Marker Computer		
	 4.2 Explain teeth attachment e.g.: Periodontal ligament Alveolar bone process Gum-tissue 	attachment e.g.:	Internet Chart Projectors Journals Textbooks Pictorials Visual Aids		
	7 1	List types of Periodontal ligament			
General	Objective 5.0: Understand dis		tructures.		
	5.1 List the disorder in enamel and dentine formation		Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Chart Projectors		

	5.2 Explain the disorders	Explain the disorders	Journals		
	-	mentioned in 5.1	Textbooks		
		above	Pictorials		
		Explain the genesis	Visual Aids		
	1 0	of the disorders			
		mentioned in 5.1			
		above			
		Explain preventive			
	*	measures of			
		managing the			
		disorders mentioned			
		in 5.1			
General	Objective 6.0: Understand the		ment of the pul	n	
10-11		Explain the pulp	Whiteboard	·r	
	on beine the purp	Emplain the pulp	Marker		
	6.2 Describe the pulp	Explain the pulp	Computer		
	one is consistent that I may		Internet		
	6.3 Explain the Origin and	Explain the Origin	Chart		
		1	Projectors		
		the pulp	Journals		
			Textbooks		
	6.4 Describe the fibres in pulp	Explain the fibres in	Pictorials		
	• •	pulp	Visual Aids		
		1 1			
	6.5 Describe the blood vessels	Explain the blood			
		vessels in pulp			
	r ··· r	. r. r			
	6.6 State the functions of the	Explain the functions			
		of the pulp			
	1 1	1 1			

General	Objective 7.0: Understand the	gingivae and the erupt	ion process of	f the teeth		
12	 7.1 Define gingivae 7.2 List the types of gingivae 7.3 Describe the types of gingivae listed in 7.2 above 7.4 Describe the eruption process of teeth 	above Explain the eruption process of teeth	Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Chart Projectors Journals Textbooks Pictorials Visual Aids			
	Objective 8.0: Know the oral	<u> </u>	1	1		
13-14	 8.1 Define Oral cavity 8.2 Describe the structures of the oral cavity 8.3 Describe the structures of the oral cavity listed in 8.2 above 	Define Oral cavity Explain the structures of the oral cavity Explain the structures of the oral cavity listed in 8.2 above	Internet Chart Projectors	 Oral cavity Mandible Maxillae A tooth A tooth in cross-section Draw and label the lateral view of the skull showing the	 Oral cavity Mandible Maxillae	Model Charts Fictorials

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY					
COURSE: Phantom Head	COURSE CODE: DTH 212	CREDIT UNIT: 3			
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 1			
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 2			

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with knowledge and pre-clinical practical skills in periodontal debridement (scaling and polishing).

- 1.0 Know the components of the phantom head
- 2.0 Know the instruments used in periodontal debridement
- 3.0 Know the various grasps in relation to periodontal debridement
- 4.0 Know the correct working angulation for fulcrum for procedures in periodontal debridement
- 5.0 Know the scaling and polishing procedure on the phantom head

	RAMME: NATIONAL DIPLO SE: Phantom Head	COURSE CODE: DT		CREDI	Γ UNIT: 3	
COUNS	5E. I Haittoili Heatt					
		CONTACT HOURS:	3	ТНЕОБ	RETICAL: 1	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:		PRACT	ICAL: 2	
COURS	SE SPECIFIFCATION: THE	ORETICAL AND PRAC	CTICAL	·		
GOAL:	This course is designed to equip	the students with know	ledge and pro	e-clinical practical	skills in periodonta	ıl
ebridei	ment (scaling and polishing).					
Genera	l Objective 1.0: Know the com	ponents of the phantom	head			
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT	-		PRACTICAL C	ONTENT	
			1			,
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning		Resources
		Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define phantom head	Explain phantom head	Textbooks	Identify the	Guide students	Phantom
1-3			Whiteboard	components of	to:	Head
	1.2 List the components of	Explain the components	Marker	the phantom head		
	the phantom head	of the phantom head	Projector		Identify the	
			Computer		components of	
	1.3 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance	Internet.		the phantom head	1
	each component of	of each component of	Journals			
	phantom head listed in 1.2	phantom head listed in	Charts			
	above to the human head	1.2 above to the human				
		head				
Genera	l Objective 2.0: Know the instr	uments used in periodon	tal debridem	ent	•	
-5	2.1 Define Periodontal	Explain Periodontal	Textbooks.	Identify the types	Guide students:	Gross
	Debridement	Debridement	Whiteboard	of instrument used	Identify the	Scalers
			Marker	in periodontal	types of	
				debridement	instrument used	
			Computer			

	2.3 Describe the function of	Explain the types of instrument used in periodontal debridement Explain the function of instruments above	Internet Journal Charts		in periodontal debridement	
	2.4 Describe the instruments in	•				
		above				
	Objective 3.0: Know the vario			ebridement		
6-7			Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Projector Computer Internet Journal Charts	Demonstrate instrument grasps	Guide students to: Demonstrate instrument grasps	
	debridement	periodontal debridement				
	Objective 4.0: Know the corre		1			
8-11		Explain angulation Explain angulation in		Demonstrate angulation in dental	Guide students to: Demonstrate	Dental chair Dental
	dental Instrumentation	dental Instrumentation		Instrumentation	angulation in dental	instruments

	4.3 Describe the differences	Explain the differences	Journal	Identify the	Instrumentation	
	between angulation in	between angulation in	Internet	difference		
	scaling and root planning	scaling and root	Charts	between	Identify the	
	procedures	planning procedures		angulation in	difference	
	_			scaling and root	between	
	4.4 Describe the removal of	Explain the removal of		planning	angulation in	
	deposits from teeth	deposits from teeth		procedures	scaling and root	
	applying angulation	applying angulation			planning	
				Demonstrate the	procedures	
				process of		
				removing deposits	Demonstrate the	
				from teeth	process of	
				applying	removing	
				angulation	deposits from	
					teeth applying	
					angulation	
General	Objective 5.0: Know the scali	ng and polishing proced	ures on the pl	hantom head		
12-14	5.1 Explain how to fix and	Explain how to fix and	Textbooks	Demonstrate the	Guide students	Phantom
	adjust the phantom head to	adjust the phantom	Whiteboard	preparation of the	to:	Head
	the workbench	head to the workbench	Marker	phantom head for		
			Projector	practical	Demonstrate the	
	5.2 Describe deposit removal	Explain deposit	Computer		preparation of	
	from the mouth of the	removal from the	Journals		the phantom	
	phantom head	mouth of the phantom	Internet	Demonstrate how	head for	
		head	Charts	to fix and adjust	practical.	
				the phantom head		
	5.3 Describe polishing	Explain polishing		to the workbench	Demonstrate how	,
	procedure after scaling	procedure after scaling		for easy operation	to Fix and adjust	
					the phantom head	
					to the workbench	

Sort and set the for easy	,
instruments operation	
required for the	
	d set the
polishing instrum	
	l for the
scaling	
Select the correct polishing	
instruments for procedu	_
removing deposits	
on the teeth of the Select t	he
phantom head correct	
instrum	ents for
removin	ng
deposits	=
Demonstrate the teeth of	the
removal of phantor	n head
deposits from the	
teeth of the Demon	strate the
phantom head, remova	of
using the correct deposits	s from
instruments above, the teet	n of the
at the right phantor	n head,
position, with the using the	e correct
correct grasps and instrum	ents
motions above,	at the
right po	sition,
with the	correct
Select the correct grasps a	ind
instruments for motions	}

	polishing the teeth	
		Select the
	head.	correct
		instruments for
		polishing the
	Demonstrate	teeth of the
	Polishing teeth of	phantom head.
	the phantom head	
	after successful	Demonstrate
	removal of	Polishing teeth
	deposits using the	of the phantom
	instruments above	head after
		successful
		removal of
		deposits using
	Demonstrate the	the instruments
	application	above
	precaution to	
	prevent injuries to	Demonstrate the
	the soft and hard	application
	tissue during	precaution to
	scaling and	prevent injuries
	polishing.	to the soft and
	_	hard tissue
		during scaling
		and polishing.

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY				
COURSE: Oral Health Education	COURSE CODE: DTH 213	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of good oral health

- 1.0 Understand the importance of good oral health
- 2.0 Know the materials required for maintenance of good oral health
- 3.0 Understand the food necessary for the maintenance of good oral health

PROG	RAMME: NATIONAL DIPI	LOMA DENTAL THER	APY			
COUR	SE: Oral Health Education	COURSE C	ODE: DTH	213	CREDIT UNIT:	2
		CONTACT	HOURS:	2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I		PRE-REQU	USITE:	I	PRACTICAL:	1
COUR	SE SPECIFIFCATION: TH	EORETICAL AND PRA	CTICAL			
	: This course is designed to pr			skills of good ora	al health	
	al Objective 1.0: Understand	the importance of good or	al health			
THEC	DRETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL (CONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learnin	g Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define health	Explain health	Textbooks Whiteboard			
1-4	1.2 Explain dental health	Explain dental health	Marker			
	education	education	Projector			
			Computer			
	1.3 Explain the importance	Explain the important of	Journals			
	of good oral health	good oral health	Internet Charts			
	1.4 List the health risk	Explain the health risk				
	associated with poor	associated with poor				
	oral health	oral health				
	1.5 State the relationship	Explain the relationship				
	between oral and	between oral and				
	general health	general health				
	al Objective 2.0: Know the m	-	, <u> </u>	od oral health		
5-8	2.1 Explain material used for	Explain material used	Textbooks	Identify material		Toothpaste
	cleaning the mouths such	_	Whiteboard	used for cleaning	g to:	
	as:	such as:	Marker	the mouths		Toothbrush

• Toothpaste	Toothpaste	Projector		Identify	
 Toothbrush 	 Toothbrush 	Computer		material used	Wood point
 Wood points 	 Wood points 	Atlas	Identify the types	for cleaning the	
 Dental floss 	 Dental floss 	Journals	of toothbrushes	mouths	Dental floss
Chewing stickOral rinse etc.	Chewing stickOral rinse etc.	Internet Charts	Demonstrate the	Identify the types of	Chewing stick
2.2 Describe the composition of a toothpaste	Explain the composition of a toothpaste.		tooth brushing techniques	toothbrushes	Posters
2.3 State the importance of fluoride in toothpaste	Explain the importance of fluoride in toothpaste		Demonstrate the uses of wood point and dental floss	tooth brushing techniques	
2.4 Describe a good toothbrush	Explain a good toothbrush		Identify the types	Demonstrate the uses of wood point and dental	
2.5 Explain types of toothbrushes	Explain types of toothbrushes		of chewing sticks	floss Identify the	
2.6 Explain the differences observed in the brushes mentioned in 2.6 above	Explain the differences observed in the brushes mentioned in 2.6 above		Demonstrate the use of chewing stick	types of chewing sticks Demonstrate the	
2.7 Describe tooth brushing techniques	Explain tooth brushing techniques			use of chewing stick	
2.8 Explain the advantages and disadvantages of the techniques listed in 2.7	Explain the advantages and disadvantages of the techniques listed in 2.7				
above	above				

	2.9 Describe the types of chewing sticks	Explain the types of chewing sticks			
	2.10 Explain the uses of the chewing sticks listed in 2.9	Explain the uses of the chewing sticks listed in 2.9			
	2.11 Explain advantages and disadvantages of the chewing stick on the teeth and the gingivae	Explain advantages and disadvantages of the chewing stick on the teeth and the gingivae			
	2.12 State the specific use of wood point and dental floss	Explain the specific use of wood point and dental floss			
Genera	al Objective 3.0: Understand the	ne food necessary for the	maintenance (of good oral health	
9-11	3.1 Define diet	Define diet	Textbooks Whiteboard		
	3.2 State the component of balance diet	of balance diet	Marker Projector Computer		
	3.3 Explain the importance of food to general health	of food to general health	Journals Internet Charts		
	3.4 List the food for good oral health	List the food for good oral health			
	3.5 Explain self-cleansing food (fruits)	Explain self-cleansing food (fruits)			

*	Explain of self- cleansing fruits		
, and the second			
	Explain the role of food		
	in the formation of carries and periodontitis		
	Explain the effects of		
deficiency on oral health	the deficiency on oral health		

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIOAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY				
COURSE: General Pathology II	COURSE CODE: DTH 214	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 1	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 124	PRACTICAL: 0		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with knowledge of pathological diseases

- 1.0 Understand bacterial infection in man
- 2.0 Understand the wound healing process in man
- 3.0 Understand congenital and hereditary disease of man
- 4.0 Understand some gastrointestinal disease of man
- 5.0 Understand neoplasm in man

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: General Pathology II	COURSE CODE: DTH 214	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 124	PRACTICAL: 0		

COURSE SPECIFIFCATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with knowledge of pathological diseases

General Objective 1.0: Understand the bacterial Infection in man

THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT			
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define Bacteria	Explain Bacteria	Textbooks			
1 4			Whiteboard			
1-4	1.2 Explain bacterial	Explain bacterial	Marker			
	infection in man	infection in man	Projector			
			Computer			
	1.3 Describe the routes	Explain the routes of	Journals			
	of bacterial	bacterial infection in	Internet			
	infection in man	man	Charts			
			Microscope			
	1.4 Explain the body reaction to	Explain the body reaction to bacterial	Slide			
	bacterial infection	infection				
	1.5 Differentiate	Explain how to				
	between chronic	differentiate between				
	and acute	chronic and acute				
	inflammation	inflammation				
	mmammation	miammauon				

	1.6 Explain	Explain pathogenic		
	_	bacteria		
	pathogenic	Dacterra		
	bacteria			
	Objective 2.0: Understa		<u> </u>	
5-8	2.1 Define wound	Define wound	Textbooks	
			Whiteboard	
	2.2 Explain types of	Explain types of	Marker	
	wounds	wounds	Projector	
			Computer	
	2.3 Differentiate	Explain the	Journals	
		differences between a		
	wound and infected		Charts	
	wound	infected wound	Charts	
	Wouliu	infected wound		
	0.45			
	2.4 Explain the healing			
	process	process in clean		
	in clean wound	wound		
	2.5 Explain the healing	Explain the healing		
	process in infected	process in infected		
	wound	wound		
General	Objective 3.0: Understa	and congenital and here	ditary diseases of man	
9-11	3.1 Define congenital	Explain congenital	Textbooks -	
			Whiteboard	
	3.2 Define hereditary	Explain hereditary	Marker	
	5.2 Define hereditary	Explain hereulary	Projector	
	2.2 December	Evulain aggregated		
	3.3 Describe congenital	1	Computer	
	diseases	diseases	Journals	
			Internet	

	3.4 Describe hereditary	Explain hereditary	Charts
	diseases of man	diseases of man	
Genera	 Objective 4.0: Understa	 and some gastrointestin	al diseases of man
12-13	4.1 Explain	Explain Explain	Textbooks
	gastrointestinal	gastrointestinal	Whiteboard
		diseases of man e.g.:	Marker
	• Gastroenteritis	Gastroenteritis	Projector
	Typhoid fever	Typhoid fever	Computer
	etc.	etc.	Journals
			Internet
	4.2 Describe the	Explain the causative	Charts
	causative agents of	agents of 4.1 above	
	4.1 above		
	4.3 Explain the	Explain the	
	pathogenesis of 4.1	pathogenesis of 4.1	
	above	above	
Genera	l Objective 5.0: Underst	and neoplasm in man	
14-15	5.1 Define precancerous	Explain precancerous	Textbooks
	condition	condition	Whiteboard
			Marker
	5.2 Explain the types of		Projector
	precancerous	precancerous	Computer
	condition	condition	Journals
			Internet
	5.3 Define neoplasms	Explain neoplasms	Charts

5.4 Explain	Explain classifications
classifications of	of neoplasms
neoplasms	 Behaviour
• Behaviour	• Tissue of
• Tissue of origin	origin
5.5 Explain behaviour neoplasm	Explain behaviour neoplasm
5.6 Explain neoplasm due to the tissue of origin	Explain neoplasm due to the tissue of origin
5.7 Define benign tumour	Explain benign tumour
5.8Define malignant tumour	Explain malignant tumour
5.9 Differentiate between benign and malignant tumour	Explain the differences between benign and malignant tumour
5.10 Explain the characteristics of benign tumour	Explain the characteristics of benign tumour

5.11 Explain the	Explain the		
characteristic of	characteristic of		
malignant tumour	malignant tumour		

EVALUATION: CA 30%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY					
COURSE TITLE: Dental Instrumentation I	COURSE CODE: DTH 215	CREDIT UNIT: 2			
	CONTACT HOURS: 1	THEORETICAL: 1			
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1			

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with knowledge and skills for simulation in phantom head studio using dental therapy hand instruments

- 1.0 Know dental therapy hand instruments
- 2.0 Know the instruments for gross scaling
- 3.0 Know the instruments for fine scaling
- 4.0 Know the instruments and equipment for polishing of the teeth

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Dental Instrumentation I	COURSE CODE: DTH 215	CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1					
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1					
COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL							

COURSE SPECIFIFCATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with Knowledge and skills for simulation in phantom head studio using dental therapy hand instruments

General Objective 1.0: Know dental therapy hand instruments

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-4	1.1 Explain the instruments for examination of oral cavity:	-	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker	1	Guide students to: Identify the instruments for	Mouth mirror
	Mouth mirrorPeriodontal probeOther probes	cavity: • Mouth mirror	Projector Computer Journals	examination of oral cavity	examination of oral cavity	probe
	• Tweezers	Periodontal probeOther probesTweezers	Internet Charts	use probe to	use probe to determine the depth	College tweezers Caries
				Determine the	pocket Determine the presence of tooth	probes
	=	Explain the functions of mouth mirror:		decay using the caries probe	decay using the caries probe	

	probe to determine the	 Illumination Direct Vision Indirect Vision Retraction Explain how to use probe to determine the depth of periodontal pocket		cavity using tweezers	Transfer material to and from the oral cavity using tweezers	
	caries probe 1.6 Describe the uses of	Explain the presence of tooth decay using the periodontal probe Explain the uses of tweezer				
Gener	al Objective 2.0: Know the	instruments for gross	scaling			
5-8	2.1 Define Gross scaling	Explain Gross scaling	Textbooks	Identify the	Guide students to:	Jacquettes
	_		Whiteboard	instruments for gross		1,2 and 3
	2.2 Describe the	Explain the	Marker	scaling	Identify the	
	instruments for gross	instruments for gross	Projector		instruments for	Hoes
	scaling e.g.:	scaling e.g.:	Computer	Set the instruments	gross scaling	
	• Jacquettes 1,2	• Jacquettes 1,2	Journals	ready for use		Chisel
	and 3	and 3	Internet		Set the	
	Hoes	• Hoes	Charts	Apply the jacquettes	instruments ready	Gross
	Chisel	 Chisel 		1,2 and 3		excavators
	Gross	 Gross 			Apply the	
	excavators etc.	excavators etc.			jacquettes 1,2 and 3	
				Apply the hoe scalers		

	2.3 Describe the	Explain the		Apply the chisel	Apply the hoe	
	application of	application of		scalers	scalers	
	jacquettes 1,2 and 3	jacquettes 1,2 and 3			Apply the chisel	
				Apply the gross	scalers	
	2.4 Describe the	Explain the		excavators		
	application of hoe	application of hoe			Apply the gross	
	scalers	scalers			excavators	
	2.5 Describe the	Explain the				
	application of chisel	application of chisel				
	scalers	scalers				
	2.6 Describe the	Explain the				
	application of gross	application of gross				
	excavators	excavators				
	2.7 Describe the	Explain the				
		application of other				
	instruments for gross	instruments for gross				
	scaling	scaling				
Gener	al Objective 3.0: Know the	instruments for fine sca	aling	l	1	
9-12	3.1 Define fine scaling	Explain fine scaling	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Drury scalers
			Whiteboard	Identify instruments	Identify	
	3.2 List instruments for	Explain instruments	Marker	for fine scaling	instruments for fine	Fine
	fine scaling:	for fine scaling:	Projector		scaling	excavators
	 drury scalers 	• drury scalers	Computer	Set the instruments	Set the instruments	
	 fine excavators 	• fine excavators	Journals	ready for use	ready for use	Chisel (fine)
	• chisel (fine)	• chisel (fine)	Internet			
	• curettes	• curettes	Charts	Apply the drury		Curettes
	• sickles etc.	• sickles etc.		scalers	scalers	

	Explain instruments			Sickles
in 3.2 above	in 3.2 above	Apply the fine	Apply the fine	
		excavator	excavator	
3.4 Describe the	Explain the			
application of drury	application of drury	Apply the fine chisel	Apply the fine	
scalers	scalars		chisel	
		Apply the curettes	Apply the curettes	
3.5 Describe the	Explain the			
application of fine	application of fine	Apply the sickles	Apply the sickles	
excavators	excavators			
		Apply other fine	Apply other fine	
3.6 Describe the	Explain the	scaling instruments	scaling instruments	
application of fine	application of fine	for fine scaling	for fine scaling	
chisel	chisel			
3.7 Describe the	Explain the			
application of curettes	-			
	curettes			
3.8 Describe the	Explain the			
application of the	application of the			
sickles	sickles			
3.9 Describe the	Explain the			
application of other	application of other			
instruments for fine	instruments for fine			
scaling	scaling			

Genera	General Objective 4.0: Know the instruments and equipment's for polishing of the teeth						
13-14	4.1 Define tooth polishing	Define tooth	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental units	
		polishing	Whiteboard	Identify equipment	Identify the		
	4.2 Describe equipment	Explain equipment	Marker	for tooth polishing	equipment for tooth	Spot light	
	for tooth polishing:	for tooth polishing:	Projector		polishing		
	 Dental units 	 Dental units 	Computer			Contra-	
	 Spot light 	Spot light	Journals	Identify instruments	Identify the	angled hand	
			Internet	for tooth polishing	instruments for	piece	
	4.3 Describe instruments	Explain instruments	Charts		tooth polishing		
	for tooth polishing:	for tooth polishing:				Bristle	
	 Contra-angled hand 	• Contra-angled		Attach the	Attach the	brushes-	
	piece	hand piece,		instruments to	instruments to	wheel	
	Bristle brushes-	• Bristle brushes-		their equipment	their equipment		
	wheel and cup	wheel and cup				Cup	
	types,	types,		Carryout tooth	Carryout tooth		
	Rubber cups-small	• Rubber cups-		Polishing	Polishing	Small and	
	and large polisher	small and				large	
		large polisher				polisher	

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY						
COURSE: Dental Radiography I	COURSE CODE: DTH 216	CREDIT UNIT: 2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: 11 SEMESTER: 1	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of Dental Radiography

- 1.0 Understand the principle of Radiography
- 2.0 Know the techniques of oral radiography
- 3.0 Know the hazards associated with radiography and their protective measures

COUR	SE: Dental Radiography I	COURSE	E CODE: DTH 216		CREDIT	UNIT: 2	
		CONTACT	Γ HOURS:	2	THEORI	ETICAL: 1	
YEAR	SEMESTER: 1	PRE-REQ	UISITE:		PRACTI	CAL: 1	
COUR	SE SPECIFICATION: TH	EORETICAL AND PRA	ACTICAL				
GOAL:	This course is designed to p	provide students with the	knowledge a	nd skills of	Dental Rad	iography	
Genera	l Objective 1.0: Understand	the principle of Radiogram	raphy				
THEO	PRETICAL CONTENT			PRACTI	CAL CON	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific I	earning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome		Activities	
1-3	 1.1 Define the following terms: Radiology Radiography X- ray Radiation Medical imaging 1.2 Outline the history of radiography 1.3 List types of radiation and their uses 1.4 Explain the concept of the following: Matter Electricity X- ray tube 	Explain the following terms: Radiology Radiography X- ray Radiation Medical imaging Explain the history of radiography Explain the types of radiation and their uses Explain the concept of the following: Matter Electricity The X- ray tube	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Projector Computer Journals Internet Charts X-ray film Storage box				

Basic X- ray	Basic X- ray	
absorption	absorption	
 Scattered X-ray 	Scattered X-ray	
Scattered A-ray	Scattered A-ray	
1.5 Describe X-ray films	Explain X-ray films,	
 Intra-oral film 	• Intra-oral film	
 Size and speed of 	Size and speed	
Extra oral film,	of Extra oral	
 Film properties 	film,	
etc.	• Film	
	properties etc.	
1.6 Explain the following	Explain the following	
terms:	terms:	
 Latent image 	Latent image	
formation	formation	
 Latent image 	Latent image	
 Film processing 	• Film processing	
etc.	etc.	
1.7 Explain radiation	Explain radiation	
factors:	factors:	
 Exposure time 	• Exposure time	
 Kilovoltage 	Kilovoltage	
• Tube-film distance	• Tube-film	
 Focal spot size 	distance	
 Collimation 	 Focal spot size 	
 Filtration 	 Collimation 	
 Equipment 	• Filtration	
efficiency	• Equipment	
_	efficiency	
	-	

	1.8 Explain object factors:	Explain object factors:				
	Thickness	Thickness				
	• Density	Density				
	Object image	Object image				
	distance	distance				
	Image quality etc.	Image quality				
	image quanty etc.	etc.				
	1.9 Explain image	Explain image				
	recording factors:	recording factors:				
	Reduction of	Reduction of				
	secondary radiation	secondary				
	• Film storage etc.	radiation				
	i iiii storage etc.	Film storage				
		etc.				
	1.10 Explain radiographic					
	1 0 1	Explain radiographic				
		quantity				
General	Objective 2.0: Know the te	echniques of oral radiogr	aphy		1	
4-8	2.1 Describe bisecting and	Explain bisecting and	Journals,	Demonstrate patient	Guide the	X-ray films
	paralleling techniques	paralleling techniques	Projectors,	positioning in	students to:	
			Textbooks	different oral x- ray	Demonstrate	Dental
	2.2 Describe patient	Explain patient	Computer	investigation	patient	model
	positioning in different	positioning in	Internet		positioning in	
	oral x- ray	different oral x- ray			different oral x-	
	investigation	investigation		Demonstrate film	ray investigation	Self-
				placement and		developing
	2.3 Describe film	Explain film		angulation procedure	Demonstrate	films
	placement and	placement and		using the bisecting	film placement	
	angulation procedure	angulation procedure		and paralleling	and angulation	-
		using the bisecting		techniques	procedure using	room

	using the bisecting and	and paralleling			the bisecting	
	paralleling techniques	techniques		Demonstrate x-ray	and paralleling	Lead apron
		Explain exposure		film processing	techniques	
		factors		technique		Viewing box
	2.4 Explain exposure				Demonstrate x-	
	factors	Explain the features and			ray film	Storage box
		care of darkroom			processing	
	2.5 Describe the features				technique	
	and care of darkroom	Explain x-ray film				
		processor and				
	2.6 Describe x-ray film processor and	processing solutions				
	processing solutions	Explain care and				
		loading of film holder				
	2.7 Describe care and					
	loading of film holder	Explain x-ray film				
		processing technique				
	2.8 Describe x-ray film					
	processing technique	Explain the process of				
		oral x-ray films using				
	2.9 Explain the process of	the techniques in 2.8				
	oral x-ray films using	above				
	the techniques in 2.8					
	above					
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Know the h	azards associated with ra	diography and	d their protective meas	ures	
9-12	3.1 Define radiation hazard	Explain radiation	Textbook	Identify the various	Guide students	Lead apron
		hazard	Journals	protective measures	to:	
	3.2 Explain the effect of	Explain the effect of	Computer	against radiation	Identify the	Leaded wall
	radiation on living	radiation on living	Internet	hazards	various	
	tissue	tissue	Projector		protective	Lead shield

		measures	
3.3 Describe the variou	s Explain the various	against	PPE
protective measure	protective measures	radiation	
against radiation	against radiation	hazards	
hazards:	hazards:		
Lead apron	Lead apron		
leaded wall	• leaded wall		
Lead shield	Lead shield		

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Research Methodology in Den	tal Therapy	COURSE CODE: DTH 217	CREDIT UNIT:	2		
		CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	2		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I		PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	0		

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge of conducting research using scientific and systematic approaches.

- 1.0 Understand Scientific Literacy in Research Methodology
- 2.0 Understand Research in Dental Therapy
- 3.0 Understand Innovation and Research in Dental Therapy
- 4.0 Understand Report Writing in Research

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE : Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	COURSE CODE: DTH 217	CREDIT UNIT: 2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2				
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0				
COLIDGE CRECIEVO A PROME PRIESDE PRICAL AND	DD A CITIC A I					

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge of conducting research using scientific and systematic approaches.

General Objective 1.0: Understand Scientific Literacy in Research Methodology

THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome		
1-2	1.1 Define Research	Explain Research	Text books			
			Projector			
	1.2 Explain types of	Explain types of	Computer			
	research	research	Lecture notes			
			Slides			
	1.3 Explain Research	Explain Research	Marker			
	Methodology	Methodology	Whiteboard			
			Eraser			
	1.4 Explain the	Explain the importance	Internet			
	importance of	of Research in dental	resources			
	Research in dental	therapy				
	therapy					
	1.5 Explain the scientific	Explain the scientific				
	methods used to	methods used to collect				
	collect dental	dental samples/data				
	samples/data					

	1.6 Explain the scientific methods used to analyze dental samples/data	Explain the scientific methods used to dental forensic samples/data			
	1.7 Explain the scientific methods used to interpret dental samples/data	Explain the scientific methods used to interpret dental samples/data			
	1.8 Explain plagiarism in research	Explain plagiarism in research			
	1.9 Explain the importance of antiplagiarism software	Explain the importance of anti-plagiarism software			
Genera	al Objective 2.0: Understan	nd Research in Dental The	rapy		
3-5	2.1 Define evidence-based practices	Explain evidence-based practices.	Projector		
	2.2 Explain accuracy in research-based techniques in dental therapy	Explain Accuracy in research-based techniques in dental therapy	Computer Lecture notes Slides Marker Whiteboard Eraser		
	2.3 Explain ethics in research-based techniques in dental therapy	Explain ethics in research-based techniques in dental therapy	Journals Internet resources		

	2.4 Explain objectivity of	Explain objectivity of			
	dental sample analysis	dental sample analysis			
	2.5 Explain reducing	Explain reducing			
	subjective	subjective			
	interpretations	interpretations			
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Understan	d Innovation and Researc	h in Dental ther	apy	
6-7	3.1 Explain new research	Explain new research	Textbooks		
	methodologies in	methodologies in	Projector		
	existing dental therapy	existing dental therapy	Computer		
			Lecture notes		
	3.2 Explain how	Explain how	Slides		
	collaborative research	collaborative research	Marker		
	can improve existing	can improve existing	Whiteboard		
	dental practices	dental practices	Eraser		
			Journals		
	3.3 Explain innovation to	Explain innovation to	Internet		
	advanced dental	advance dental	resources		
	techniques and	techniques and			
	technology	technology			
	3.4 Explain the integrity	Explain the integrity of			
	of evidence in dental	evidence in dental			
	therapy research	therapy research			
Genera	l Objective 4.0: Understand	d Report Writing in Rese	arch		
8-10	4.1 Define research report	Explain research report	Textbooks		
	writing	writing	Projector		
			Computer		
	4.2 Explain preliminary	Explain preliminary	Lecture notes		
	chapters in research	chapters in research	Slides		

Abstract	• Abstract	Marker		
Introduction	 Introduction 	Whiteboard		
Literature review	• Literature review	Eraser		
Methodology	 Methodology 	Journals		
• Results	 Result 	Internet		
 Discussion 	 Discussion 	resources		
Recommendation	• Recommendation			
and conclusion	and conclusion			
4.3 Explain referencing in	Explain referencing in			
research	research			

EVALUATION: C.A: 30% EXAMINATION: 70%

YEAR II SEMESTER II

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPOLMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: First Aid and Dental Emergencies	COURSE CODE: DTH 221	CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1					
YEAR: II SEMESTER: 1I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1					

GOAL: This course is design to equip the students with knowledge and skills of handling emergency cases

- 1.0 Know the principles and practice of first aid
- 2.0 Know the management of various cases of emergencies.
- 3.0 Know the management of wound, bleeding and fracture.
- 4.0 Know the application of dressing and bandages.
- 5.0 Know the nervous system and unconsciousness.

COURS	E: First Aid and Dental Emo	ergencies COURSE (C ODE : DTH	I 221 CF	REDIT UNIT:	2
		CONTACT	Γ HOURS:	2 TH	IEORETICAL:	1
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQ	UISITE:	PR	ACTICAL:	1
COUR	SE SPECIFIFCATION: TH	HEORETICAL AND PR	ACTICAL			
GOAL	: This course is design to equi	ip the students with know	wledge and sk	kills of handling e	mergency cases	
General	Objective 1.0: Know the prin	nciples and practice of fi	rst aid			
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL	CONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learnin	ng Teacher's	Evaluation
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-3	1.1 Define first aid	Explain first aid	Journals	Demonstrate	Guide students	Sphygmomano-
			Projector	procedures for	to:	meter
	1.2 Explain the aims of	Explain the aims of	Audio-	taking vital signs	1	Clinical
	first aid	first aid	Virtual aids		Demonstrate	thermometer
			Computer		procedures for	Stethoscope
	1.3 Explain the functions of	Explain the functions	Internet		taking vital	Wristwatch
	first aid	of first aid	Projector		signs	Charts
			Charts			Trolley
	1.4 List the vital signs that	Explain the vital signs				Mannequin
	determine the symptoms	that determine the				
	of emergency cases	symptoms of				
		emergency cases				

and transportation of

injured person

and transportation of

injured person

General	Objective 2.0: Know the ma	nagement of cases emer	gencies.			
	2.1 Describe the method to	Explain the method to	Journals	Simulate the	Guide students	Mannequin
4-6	adopt in handling	adopt in handling	Projector	management of	to:	
	emergencies	emergencies	Audio-	the following:	Simulate the	Dental chair
			Virtual aids	 Shock 	management of	
	2.2 Define shock	Explain shock	Computer	 Fainting 	the following:	Oxygen
			Internet	• Epileptic	Shock	cylinder
	2.3 Explain the signs and	Explain the signs and	Projector	seizures	 Fainting 	
	symptoms of shock	symptoms of shock	Charts	• Asthmatic	 Epileptic 	Oxygen mask
				attack	seizures	
	2.4 State the causes of	Explain the causes of			Asthmatic	First aid box
	shock	shock			attack	
	250 11 4					
	2.5 Describe the	Explain the				
	management of shock	management of shock				
	2.6 Explain the signs and	Explain the signs and				
	symptoms of fainting	symptoms of fainting				
	symptoms of running					
	2.7 Explain the causes of	Explain the causes of				
	fainting	fainting				
	2.8 Describe the	Explain the				
	management of	management of				
	fainting	fainting				
	2.9 List the causes of	Explain the causes of				
	Asphyxia	Asphyxia				

	2.10 Explain apilentia	Explain epileptic				
	seizures	seizures				
	-	Explain asthmatic				
	attack	attack				
General	Objective 3.0: Know the ma	nagement of wound, blee	eding and fra	cture.		
	3.1 Define wounds	Explain wounds	Journals	Demonstrate how	Guide students	Tourniquet
			Projector	to manage	to:	
7-8	3.2 Describe types of	Explain types of wound	Audio-	fractures	Demonstrate	Bandages
	wound		Virtual aids		how to manage	
	3.3 Describe the	Explain the	Computer		fractures	Gauze
	management of wound	management of wound	Internet			
	_	_	Projector			Cotton wool
	3.4 Explain the signs and	Explain the signs and	Charts			
	symptoms of bleeding	symptoms of bleeding				
	3.5 Describe different	Explain different				
	classes of bleeding	classes of bleeding				
	3.6 Describe the	Explain the				
	management of bleeding	-				
		bleeding				
	3.7 Define fracture	Explain fracture				
		1				
	3.8 Explain types of	Explain types of				
	fracture	fracture				
General	Objective 4.0: Know the app	blication of dressing and	bandages	1	1	1
	4.1 Explain the types of	Explain the types of	Journals		Guide students	Bandage
9-10	1 71	1 71				
9-10	dressing	1 71	Projector		to:	Gauze

	4.2 Describe the application	Explain the application	Audio-	Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	Cotton Wool
	of dressing	of dressing	Virtual aids	application of	application of	Plaster
			Computer	dressing	dressing	Dressing
	4.3 Explain the advantages	Explain the advantages	Internet			Materials
	of dressing	of dressing	Projector			Hydrogel
			Charts			Hydrogen
	4.4 Define bandages	Explain bandages				Peroxide
						Normal saline
	4.5 Explain the uses of	Explain the uses of				
	bandages	bandages				
	4.6 Describe the application	Explain the application				
	of bandages	of bandages				
General	Objective 5.0: Know the ner	vous system and uncons	ciousness	1	1	
	5.1 Define nervous system	Explain nervous	Journals		Guide students	Mannequin
		system	Projector		to:	
11-12			Audio-	Simulation of the	Simulation of	Dental chair
	5.2 Define unconsciousness	Explain	Virtual aids	management of	the management	
		unconsciousness	Computer	unconsciousness	of	Vital signs
			Internet		unconsciousness	apparatus
	5.3 State the causes of	Explain the causes of	Projector			
	unconsciousness	unconsciousness	Charts			
	5.4 Describe the	Explain the				
	management of	management of				
	unconsciousness	unconsciousness				
	5.5 Describe the stages of	Explain the stages of				
	unconsciousness	unconsciousness				

5.6 Explain the signs and	Explain the signs and		
symptoms in	symptoms in		
unconsciousness	unconsciousness		

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Anatomy of Head and Neck COURSE CODE: DTH 222 CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of anatomy of the head and neck

- 1.0 Know the bones of the skull
- 2.0 Know the mandible and maxilla.
- 3.0 Know the soft tissues of the oral cavity and the face
- 4.0 Understand the cranial nerves
- 5.0 Know the bone, muscles and blood vessels of the neck region

COURS	SE: Anatomy of Head an	d Neck	COURSI	E CODE : DTH 222	CREDIT UNIT:	2
			CONTAC	CT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL	1
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: II		PRE-RE	QUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION:	THEORETICAL ANI	D PRACTICA	L	1	
GOAL:	This course is designed	to provide students w	ith knowledge	and skills of anatomy	of the head and neck	
Genera	l Objective 1.0: Know th	ne bones of the skull				
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Describe the human	Explain the human	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Skull
1-3	skull	skull	Marker	Draw and label the	Draw and label the	skeleton
			Journals	human skull	human skull	
	1.2 Explain the bones	Explain the various	Projector			Posters
	of the skull	bones of the skull	Computer	Identify the bones of	Identify the bones of	
			Internet	the skull	the skull	Audio-
	1.3 List the facial	Explain the facial	Charts			visual
	bones	bones		Identify facial bones	Identify facial bones	
	1.4 List the cranial	Explain the cranial		Draw the base of the	Draw the base of the	
	bones	bones		skull.	skull.	
	1.5 Describe the base	Explain the base of		Identify the foramen	Identify the foramen	
	of the skull	the skull				
	1.6 Describe the	Explain the				
		foramen of a human				

General	Objective 2.0: Know the	e mandible and maxill	a			
4-6	2.1 Describe in details	Explain in details the	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Posters
	the shape of the	shape of the	Marker	Identify the foramen	Identify the foramen	
	mandible	mandible	Journals	and processes on the	and processes on the	Skulls
			Projector	human jaw	human jaw	
	2.2 Describe the shape	Explain the shape of	Computer			Anatomical
	of the maxilla	the maxilla	Internet	Draw and label a	Draw and label a	model
			Atlas	diagram if the blood	diagram if the blood	
	2.3 Describe the	Explain the foramen	Charts	and nerve supply to the	and nerve supply to	
	foramen and	and processes on the		face	the face	
	processes on the	human jaw				
	human jaw			Identify:	Identify:	
				 facial muscles 	 facial muscles 	
	2.4 Describe foramen	Explain foreman and		 muscles of 	 muscles of 	
	and processes:	processes:		mastication	mastication	
	 Infra- orbital 	 Infra- orbital 				
	foramen	foramen		Identify TMJ	Identify TMJ	
	 Mental foramen 	 Mental 				
	 Mandibular 	foramen		Draw the TMJ	Draw the TMJ	
	foramen	 Mandibular 				
	 Zygomatic 	foramen		Draw a well label	Draw a well label	
	process	 Zygomatic 		diagram of mandible	diagram of mandible	
	 Condyle 	process				
	process	 Condyle 				
	 Coronoid 	process				
	process	 Coronoid 				
		process				
	2.5 Explain blood and	Explain blood and				
	_	nerve supply to the				
	face	face				

2.6 Describe the mandible	Explain the mandible
2.7 Describe temporo- mandibular joint (TMJ) of a human being	Explain temporo- mandibular joint (TMJ) of a human being
2.8 Describe the peculiarities of TMJ	Explain the peculiarities of TMJ
2.9 Describe the bones that make up TMJ	_
2.10 Describe the muscles that control the movement of TMJ: • Masseter • Temporalis • Medial pterygoid • Lateral pterygoid	Explain the muscles that control the movement of TMJ: • Masseter • Temporalis • Medial pterygoid • Lateral pterygoid

2.11 Explain the ori	gin Explain the origin
and insertion of	f and insertion of
muscles of	muscles of
mastication	mastication
2.12 Describe the	Explain the vessel
vessel that	that supplies blood to
supplies blood	
TMJ	
2.13 Describe the no	erve Explain the nerve
supply to TMJ	supply to TMJ
supply to 11413	supply to 11413
2.14 Describe the	Explain the muscles
muscles of	of mastication
mastication	of mastication
masucation	
2.15 Explain the	Explain the functions
functions of each	-
muscles of	mastication
mastication	
2.16 Explain the blo	-
supply (artery)	
each muscles in	n each muscles in 2.14
2.14 above	above
2.18 Describe the	Explain the nerve
nerve supply to	o supply to each
each muscle in	

	2.13 above					
General	Objective 3.0: Know the	l e soft tissues of the ora	l l cavity and t	the face		
7-9		Explain the muscle of the lips	Marker		Guide students to:	Anatomical model of
	actions of the facial		Computer	Identify the facial muscles	Identify the facial muscles	head and neck
	muscles 3.3 Describe the		Internet Atlas Charts	Identify the taste buds on the tongue	Identify the taste buds on the tongue	Posters
	mucous membrane	membrane of the mouth	Charts	Draw a well labelled diagram of the tongue	Draw a well labelled diagram of the tongue	
		Explain the position and shape of the tongue		Identify the location of tonsils in the mouth	Identify the location of tonsils in the mouth	
	3.5 Describe the taste buds on the tongue	Explain the taste buds on the tongue				
	3.6 Differentiate the taste buds on the tongue	Explain the different taste buds on the tongue				
	3.7 Describe the types of tongue movements	Explain the types of tongue movements				

3	.8 Explain the	Explain the functions		
	=	of the tongue		
	tongue	or the tongue		
	•	Explain the soft and		
3		hard palate in the		
٦		mouth		
	the mouth	inoutii		
		E1-: 41 14:		
		Explain the location		
3		of tonsils in the		
		mouth		
	in the mouth			
		Explain the		
3		appearance of tonsils		
	appearance of			
	tonsils			
		Explain the function		
3	.13 Explain the	of the tonsils		
	function of the			
	tonsils			
		Explain the gums		
3	.14 Describe the gums	(gingivae)		
	(gingivae)			
		Explain the types of		
3	.15 Describe the types			
	of gums (gingivae)			
		Explain the features		
3		of a healthy gingivae		
	features of a	,		
	healthy gingivae			
	incurring gingivac			
			L	

General	Objective 4.0: Understa	and the cranial nerves				
10-11	 4.1 Define nerves 4.2 List the 12 cranial nerves 4.3 State the sensory, motor and mixed types of nerve 4.4 State the functions 	Explain the nerves Explain the 12 cranial nerves Explain the sensory, motor and mixed types of nerve Explain the functions of the nerves in 4.2	Whiteboard Marker Journals Projector Computer Internet Atlas Charts			
	above 4.5 Describe the nerve exit from the skull 4.6 Describe the functions of the nerves in 4.5 above	above Explain the nerve exit from the skull Explain the functions of the nerves in 4.5 above				
		Explain the distribution of the trigeminal nerves and the facial nerve				
	Objective 5.0: Know th		1	of the neck region	1	
12-13	Neck – atlasAxis	the: • Neck – atlas • Axis	Whiteboard Marker Journals Projector Computer	Identify bones of the neck Draw and label bones	Guide students to: Identify bones of the neck Draw and label bones	Anatomical model of head and neck
	Cervical vertebrae	Cervical vertebrae	Internet Atlas	of the neck	of the neck	Posters

		Charts		
	Explain the functions			
of the bones of the	of the bones of the			
neck	neck			
5.3 List the muscles of				
	of the :			
 Neck-platysma 	Neck-platysma			
Sternocleidoma	 Sternocleido 			
stoid trapezius	mastoid			
 Scalenes 	trapezius			
muscles	 Scalenes 			
 Pharyngens 	muscles			
	 Pharyngens 			
5.4 Describe the	Explain the function			
function of each of	of each of the			
the muscles listed	muscles listed in 5.3			
in 5.3 above	above			
5.5 Describe the origin	Explain the origin			
and insertion of the	and insertion of the			
muscles of the neck	muscles of the neck			
5.6 Explain the nerve	Explain the nerve			
	supply of muscles			
of the neck	of the neck			

EVALAUTION: C.A: 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Principles of Sterilization	COURSE CODE: DTH 223	CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1						
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1						

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge and skills of Sterilization in Dental Health Care

- 1.0: Know Microbiology and Pathogen Transmission
- 2.0 Know the Principles and Methods of Sterilization
- 3.0 Know the Aseptic Technique and Infection Control
- 4.0 Understand Regulatory Standards on Infection Control
- 5.0 Understand the Ethical and Professional Responsibility in Infection Control

PROGI	RAMME: NATIONAL DIPLO	MA DENTAL THERA	PY			
COURS	SE: Principles of Sterilization	COURSE CO	DE: DTH 2	23 C	REDIT UNIT: 2	2
		CONTACT H	IOURS: 2	Т	HEORETICAL: 1	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUIS	SITE:	P	RACTICAL: 1	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THEOR	ETICAL AND PRACTI	ICAL	<u>.</u>		
GOAL:	This course is designed to equip	students with the knowl	edge and ski	lls of sterilization	in dental health care	
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL (CONTENT	
General	l Objective 1.0: Know Microbio	ology and Pathogen Trans	smission			
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learnin	g Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-3	1.1 Define pathogens (bacteria,	Explain pathogens	Projector		Guide students to:	Microscope
	viruses, fungi) relevant to	(bacteria, viruses,	Internet			
	dental settings	fungi) relevant to dental			s Identify pathogens	Slides
		settings	Journals	(bacteria, viruses,	,	
			Marker	fungi) relevant to	,	
	1.2 Describe common	Explain the common	Computer	dental settings	dental settings	media
	infections that can be	infections that can be	Whiteboard			
	transmitted through dental	transmitted through		Identify the	Identify the	
	procedures	dental procedures		common infection		
				that can be	infections that	
	1.3 Describe micro-	Explain micro-		transmitted through		
	organisms spread in	organisms spread in		dental procedures		
	clinical environments,	clinical environments,			through dental	
	including:	including:			procedures	
	Airborne	Airborne				
	• Droplet	• Droplet				
	Contact	 Contact 				
	transmission	transmission				

2.1 Define Sterilization	Explain Sterilization	Projector		Guide Students to	:Autoclave
		Internet	Identify cleaning,	Identify cleaning,	
2.2 Define Disinfection	Explain Disinfection	Textbooks Journals	disinfection, and sterilization,	disinfection, and sterilization,	Reagents
2.3 Define Cleaning	Explain Cleaning	Marker Computer	materials and equipment	materials and equipment	Dry heat oven
2.4 Outline the distinctions	Explain the distinctions	-			
between cleaning,	between cleaning,		Demonstrate	Demonstrate	Water
disinfection, and	disinfection, and		methods of	methods of	sterilizer
sterilization	sterilization		sterilization	sterilization	
					Surgical
2.5 Describe methods of sterilization like:	Explain sterilization methods like:				gloves
 Autoclaving 	 Autoclaving 				Face mask
Chemical sterilization	 Chemical 				
 Gas sterilization 	sterilization				Soaps
 Dry heat sterilization 	Gas sterilization				
Radiation	• Dry heat				Scrubbing
• Water sterilization etc.	sterilization				brushes
	 Radiation 				
	• Water				Stainless
	sterilization etc.				kidney dis
2.6 State the mechanisms of	Explain the				Sterilizer
each method in 2.5 above	mechanisms of each				drum
	method in 2.5 above				
2.7 State the advantages and					
limitations for different	Explain the advantages				
methods in 2.5 above	and limitations for				

		different methods in 2.5 above				
Gener	al Objective 3.0: Know the Asept	ic Technique and Infecti	on Control		-	1
7-9	3.1 Define Aseptic Technique	Explain Aseptic Technique	Projector Internet Textbooks	Demonstrate the Techniques to	Guide students to: Demonstrate the Techniques to	PPE Disposal
	3.2 Define Infection Control	Explain Infection Control	Journals Marker Computer	prevent contamination	prevent contamination	containers Sterilization
	 3.3 Describe the Techniques to prevent contamination during dental procedures: Hand hygiene PPE use Proper handling of disposable materials and sharps etc. 	Explain the Techniques to prevent contamination during dental procedures: • Hand hygiene • PPE use • Proper handling of disposable materials and sharps etc.	-	Demonstrate methods of Handling Contaminated Instruments. Identify methods of Environmental Hygiene.	Demonstrate methods of Handling Contaminated Instruments. Identify methods of Environmental Hygiene	Liquids Safety box Scrubbing Brushes
	 3.4 State the various methods of Handling Contaminated Instrument prior to sterilization: Sorting Decontamination Cleaning Transportation 	Explain the various methods of Handling Contaminated Instrument prior to sterilization: • Sorting • Decontamination • Cleaning • Transportation				

	Explain the methods of				
Environmental Hygiene in	Environmental				
dental practice	Hygiene in dental				
	practice				
Objective 4.0: Understand Regu	ulatory Standards on Infe	ection Contro	1		
1 Describe Regulatory	Explain Regulatory	Projector			
Guidelines on infection	Guidelines on infection	Internet			
control	control	Textbooks			
		Journals			
2 State the regulations from	Explain the regulations	Marker			
organizations like the CDC,	from organizations like	Computer			
WHO, OSHA, and the	the CDC, WHO,	Whiteboard			
ADA	OSHA, and the ADA				
3 Describe record-keeping for	Explain record-keeping				
sterilization processes,	for sterilization				
equipment maintenance	processes, equipment				
logs, and patient safety	maintenance logs, and				
protocols	patient safety protocols				
Objective 5.0: Understand the I	Ethical and Professional	Responsibility	y in Infection Contr	ol	
1 Define Patient Safety in	Explain Patient Safety	Projector			
Infection Control	in Infection Control.	Internet			
		Textbooks			
2 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance	Journals			
strict adherence to infection	of strict adherence to	Marker			
control protocols as a	infection control	Computer			
professional and ethical	protocols as a	Whiteboard			
duty to patients	professional and ethical				
	duty to patients				
	dental practice Dispective 4.0: Understand Regilatory Guidelines on infection control State the regulations from organizations like the CDC, WHO, OSHA, and the ADA Describe record-keeping for sterilization processes, equipment maintenance logs, and patient safety protocols Dispective 5.0: Understand the Ill Define Patient Safety in Infection Control Explain the importance of strict adherence to infection control protocols as a professional and ethical duty to patients	dental practice Dijective 4.0: Understand Regulatory Standards on Infection Control State the regulations from organizations like the CDC, WHO, OSHA, and the ADA Describe record-keeping for sterilization processes, equipment maintenance logs, and patient safety protocols Dijective 5.0: Understand the Ethical and Professional Explain Regulatory Guidelines on infection control Explain the regulations from organizations like the CDC, WHO, OSHA, and the ADA Explain record-keeping for sterilization processes, equipment maintenance logs, and patient safety protocols Dijective 5.0: Understand the Ethical and Professional Define Patient Safety in Infection Control Explain the importance of strict adherence to infection control protocols as a professional and ethical	dental practice Hygiene in dental practice Hygiene in dental practice Describe Regulatory Explain Regulatory Guidelines on infection control Explain Regulatory Textbooks	dental practice Polyective 4.0: Understand Regulatory Standards on Infection Control Describe Regulatory Guidelines on infection control State the regulations from organizations like the CDC, WHO, OSHA, and the ADA Describe record-keeping for sterilization processes, equipment maintenance logs, and patient safety protocols Define Patient Safety in Infection Control Explain the regulations from organizations like the CDC, WHO, OSHA, and the ADA Explain record-keeping for sterilization processes, equipment maintenance logs, and protocols Define Patient Safety in Infection Control Explain patient Safety in Infection Control. Explain the importance of strict adherence to infection control protocols as a professional and ethical duty to patients Explain on the text of the control Explain Patient Safety in Infection control protocols as a professional and ethical protocols as a professional and ethical	dental practice Hygiene in dental practice Hygiene in dental practice

5.3 Define Risk Assessment	Explain Risk		
	Assessment		
5.4 Explain the Methods for	Explain the Methods		
1	*		
	for identifying and		
potential infection risks in	managing potential		
dental procedures and	infection risks in dental		
settings	procedures and settings		

EVALUATION: CA: 40%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Dental Materials	COURSE CODE: DTH 224	CREDIT UNIT: 3		
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1		

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with the knowledge and skills of dental materials

GENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0: Know dental materials and their composition
- 2.0 Understand the chemical and physical properties of dental materials
- 3.0 Know the classification of dental materials
- 4.0 Know the uses of dental materials
- 5.0 Know the manipulation of dental materials

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE CODE: DTH 224	CREDIT UNIT: 3				
CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 2				
PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1				
	COURSE CODE: DTH 224 CONTACT HOURS: 3				

COURSE SPECIFIFCATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with the knowledge and skills of dental materials

General Objective 1.0: Know dental materials and their composition

THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-3	 1.1 Define dental materials 1.2 Explain the common dental materials: Zinc Oxide Eugenol Alginate Local Anesthetics Fluoride Gel Sodium Fluoride Paste Prophylaxis Paste Gold Dental Cements Fissure Sealent POP Stone – Wax 	Explain dental materials Explain the common dental Materials: • Zinc Oxide Eugenol • Alginate • Local Anesthetics. • Fluoride Gel • Sodium Fluoride Paste • Prophylaxis Paste • Gold	Projector Internet Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas Computer Whiteboard	Identify the common dental materials	Guide students to: Identify the common dental materials	Zinc Oxide Eugenol Alginate Local Anesthetics Fluoride Gel Sodium Fluoride Paste Prophylaxis Paste Gold

Gutter Purcha.	• Dental		Dental
Polymer-Monomer	Cements		Cements
 Poly Sulphide 	• Fissure		
Rubber	Sealent.		Fissure Sealent
Agar - Agar	• POP		DOD
(Hydrocolloid)	• Stone – Wax		POP
Mercury (White)	Gutter Purcha.		Stone – Wax
	Polymer-		Stolle – wax
	Monomer		Gutter Purcha.
	Poly Sulphide		Gutter i diena.
	Rubber		Polymer-
	• Agar - Agar (Hydrocolloid)		Monomer
1.3 Explain the	Mercury		
composition of each of	(White)		Poly Sulphide
the dental materials	(Winte)		Rubber
listed in 1.2 above	Explain the		Agar - Agar
	composition of each		(Hydrocolloid)
1.4 Explain how the	of the dental materials		Mercury (White)
components of the	listed in 1.2 above		(winte)
dental materials affect			
their physical properties	Explain how the		
properties	components of the		
1.5 Describe the stress-	dental materials affect their physical		
strain relationship in	properties		
dental materials	properties		
	Explain the stress-		
1.6 Describe the	strain relationship in		
procedures of handling	dental materials		

	the various dental				
	materials	Explain the			
		procedures of			
	1.7 Define fluoride	handling the various			
		dental materials			
	1.8 List the types of				
	fluorides	Explain fluoride			
	1.9 State the uses of each	List the types of			
	type of fluoride	fluorides			
	1.10 Define Prohylaxic	Explain the uses of			
	paste	each type of fluoride			
	1.11 Explain the types of	Explain Prohylaxic			
	prohylaxic paste	paste			
	1.12 Describe the	Explain the types of			
	application of	prohylaxic paste			
	prohylaxic paste				
		Explain the			
		application of			
		prohylaxic paste			
	Objective 2.0 Understand the			of dental materials	
4-5		Explain the chemical	Projector		
	<u> </u>	properties of dental	Internet		
	Materials:	Materials:	Textbooks		
	 Solubility 	 Solubility 	Journals		
	 Corrosion 	 Corrosion 	Marker		
	resistance etc.	resistance etc.	Atlas		

			Computer			
	2.2 List the physical	List the physical	Whiteboard			
	properties of dental	properties of dental				
	materials listed in 1.2.	materials listed in 1.2.				
	above:	above:				
	 Rigidity 	 Rigidity 				
	 Elasticity 	 Elasticity 				
	 Abrasion resistant 	 Abrasion 				
	 Corrosion resistant 	resistant				
		 Corrosion 				
		resistant				
	2.3 Explain the properties	Explain the properties				
	of the materials in 1.2	of the materials in 1.2				
	above that make them	above that make them				
	suitable as dental	suitable as dental				
	materials	materials				
General	Objective 3.0: Know the cla	assification of dental ma	aterials			
6-8	3.1 Explain dental	Explain dental	Projector		Guide students to:	Restorative
	materials according to	materials according to	Internet			materials
	the following	the following	Textbooks	• •	Identify soft paste	(conservative)
	grouping:	grouping::	Journals	and hard paste	and hard paste	Preventive
	 Restorative 	 Restorative 	Marker			materials
	materials	materials	Atlas			Prosthetic
	(conservative)	(conservative)	Computer			materials
	• Preventive	 Preventive 	Whiteboard			
	materials	materials				
	Prosthetic materials	• Prosthetic				
		materials				

classification of dental materials according to their physical	
	Explain restorative materials
-	Explain preventive materials
•	Explain prosthetic materials
•	Explain impression compounds
euqenol is not used as an impression material	Explain why zinc oxide euqenol is not used as an impression material
1 2	Explain conditions under which polysulfide rubbers

		are used as impression	_	
		materials		
	2 0 D - C 11 11 - 1	materiais		
	3.9 Define hydrocolloid			
		Explain hydrocolloid		
•		Explain reversible		
	hydrocolloid	hydrocolloid		
	3.11Explain irreversible	Explain irreversible		
	hydrocolloid	hydrocolloid		
	3.12 Explain the	Explain the		
	comparison between	comparison between		
	reversible and	reversible and		
	irreversible	irreversible		
	hydrocolloid in	hydrocolloid in terms		
	terms of use and	of use and final		
	final product	product		
	-			
	3.13 Describe the methods	Explain the methods		
	of heating an	of heating an		
	impression compound	impression compound		
	-			
	3.14 Explain the	Explain the		
	comparison between	comparison between		
	-	the different methods		
	of heating impression	of heating impression		
	compound	compound		
	r r r	r r		
	3.15 Define Heat	Explain Heat		
	impression colloids	impression colloids		
	impression conoids	miprobbion conords		

General	3.16 Explain soft paste and hard paste3.17 Differentiate between a hard paste and soft pasteObjective 4.0: Know the us	hard paste Explain the differences between a hard paste and soft paste				
9-11	 4.1 Describe the uses of dental materials 4.2 Explain materials used for the following processes: Impression taking Casting of models Dental prosthetics 4.3 Explain the application of materials listed in 1.2 above for various purposes 	Explain the uses of dental materials Explain materials used for the following processes: • Impression taking • Casting of models • Dental prosthetics Explain the application of materials listed in 1.2 above for various purposes	Projector Internet Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas Computer Whiteboard	Identify materials used for the following processes Impression taking Casting of models Dental prosthetics Demonstrate the application of the above materials for various purposes	Guide students to: Identify materials used for the following processes Impression taking Casting of models Dental prosthetics Demonstrate the application of the above materials for various purposes	Impression taking Casting of models Dental prosthetics

12-13	5.1 Explain the concept of	Explain the concept of	Projector		Guide students to:	
	manipulation of dental	manipulation of dental	Internet		D	
	materials	materials	Textbooks		Demonstrate	
	5.2 Define setting time	Explain setting time	Journais	-	manipulation of dental materials	
		Explain the setting	Atlas			
	5.3 State the setting time of the various dental materials5.4 State the disadvantage of setting time of dental	time of the various dental materials Explain the disadvantage of setting time of dental materials	Computer Whiteboard			

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE: Introduction to Clinical Practice	COURSE CODE: DTH 225	CREDIT UNIT: 2			
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2			
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0			
	 				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with knowledge of clinical practice

GENERAL OBJECTIVES: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0 Understand the sanitation of the working environment
- 2.0 Understand the procedures for clinical examination and assessment of the patient
- 3.0 Understand the use of sterile instruments and aseptic techniques
- 4.0 Understand the technique of removing deposits from surfaces of the teeth.
- 5.0 Understand post-operative care of patients.

COURSE: Introduction to Clinical Practice I			URSE CODE	E: DTH 225	CREDIT UNIT:	2
		CO	NTACT HO	URS: 2	THEORETICAL:	2
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: II	PR	E-REQUISIT	TE:	PRACTICAL:	0
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THE	EORETICAL AND PR	ACTICAL		1	
GOAL:	This course is designed to pr	ovide the students with	knowledge of	f clinical practice		
General	Objective 1.0 Understand the	ne sanitation of the wor	king environm	ent		
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CO	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
-2	1.2 Explain dental working environment1.3 Describe standard of personal hygiene	Explain dental hygiene Explain dental working environment Explain standard of personal hygiene Explain cleaning of the dental working environments e.g.: Scrubbing the floor Ventilation Dusting Beautification	Internet Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas Computer Whiteboard			
	1.4 Describe disinfection of working materials:	etc.				

	table using alcoholic sponge handpiece, Spittum, Kidney dish Bristle Rubber cup, etc.	Explain disinfection of working materials • Wiping the bracket table using alcoholic sponge handpiece, • Spittum, • Kidney dish • Bristle • Rubber cup, etc				
General 3-4	Objective 2.0 Understand the 2.1 Define Positioning of	ne procedures for clinica Explain the positioning		and assessment of the	e patients	
			Internet			
	2.2 Explain how to record and interpret medical history	and interpret medical	Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas			
	2.3 Explain how to record and interpret dental history	_	Computer Whiteboard			
	out extra-oral	Explain how to carry out extra-oral examination				

	Interpret vital signs in patients 2.6 Describe dental charting 2.5 Describe procedures to minimise anxiety and discomfort in a patient 2.6 Describe treatment procedures plan	Explain how to Interpret vital signs in patients Explain how to carry out dental charting Explain procedures to minimise anxiety and discomfort in a patient Explain treatment procedures plan			
	Objective 3.0: Understand t			otic techniques	
5-6	sterilise the instruments required for clinical practice 3.2 Describe aseptic technique in the clinic 3.3 Describe how to layout sterile instruments for use 3.4 Explain storage sterile	required for clinical practice Explain aseptic technique in the clinic Explain how to Lay-out sterile instruments for use	Internet Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas Computer		

General	Objective 4.0: Understand t	he technique of removin	ng deposits from surfaces of the teeth
7-8	4.1 List instruments for removal of deposits from the teeth 4.2 Explain the procedure for removal of calculus from the teeth 4.3 Explain the procedure for removal of stains and	Explain instruments for removal of deposits from the teeth Explain the procedure for removal of calculus from the teeth Explain the procedure for removal of stains and plaque from the	
	 4.5 Explain application of the following during removal of deposits: Grasp Motion Fulcrum 	teeth Explain application of the following during removal of deposits: Grasp Motion Fulcrum	
	Objective 5.0: Understand p		,
9-10	brushing method 5.2 Explain other methods of cleaning the mouth e.g. using of chewing sticks, charcoal, etc.	of cleaning the mouth e.g. using of chewing sticks, charcoal, etc. Explain dietary	Projector Internet Textbooks Journals Marker Atlas Computer Whiteboard

EVALUATION: C.A: 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

PRACTICAL MANUAL FOR ND DENTAL THERAPY

Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving I	1. Identify the surfaces of the teeth
DTH 111	2. Draw the structure of a tooth
	3. Identify the types of human dentition
	4. Demonstrate the difference between the two types of dentitions
	in terms of numbers, size, shape, colour and structures.
	5. Identify each tooth in the deciduous and permanent human
	dentitions.
	6. Demonstrate each of the tooth identified above
	7. Explain the functions of each tooth.
	8. Draw and label each tooth
	9. Demonstrate the types of occlusions
	10. Demonstrate types of malocclusions
Human Anatomy and Physiology I	1. Identify the external parts of the human body.
	2. Identify the human body curvatures
DTH 112	3. Demonstrate body movements
	4. Identify the components of human cell
	5. Draw a well labelled diagram of the human cell and its components (constituents)
	6. Identify a typical human cell under the microscope.
	7. Identify and draw the major bones in each group in 4.3 above
	8. Draw and label the main bones of the skeletal system
	9. Identify and draw the different types of joints in the skeletal
	system.
	10. Draw and label the major joints of the skeletal system
	11. Draw and label the different types of muscles

	12. Draw and label a human heart
Dental Therapy Instrumentation I	Identify dental therapy instruments
	2. Draw and label dental therapy instruments
DTH 121	3. Identify the hand instruments required for the carving
	4. Identify the hand instruments required for phantom head
	5. Identify the hand instruments required for the oral examination
	of a patient.
	6. Sort the instruments identified above
Oral Physiology	1. Identify:
DEW 100	 Soft deposit
DTH 122	 Hard deposit
	 Dental stains
	2. Identify location of salivary glands
	3. Draw salivary glands
	4. Test for taste sensation in the mouth
	5. Draw and label the tongue indicating taste buds
Care and Maintenance of Dental	Identify basic equipment and instruments used in dental
Equipment/Instruments	surgery
	2. Demonstrate the use of the equipment identified above
	3. Demonstrate the working mechanism of the equipment
DTH 123	identified above
	4. Demonstrate the calibration of dental surgery equipment and
	instruments
	5. Adjust the calibration of dental surgery equipment and
	instrument
	6. Demonstrate the simple maintenance of the hand tools

	7. Identify the various items required for sharpening of hand
	instruments
	8. Demonstrate how to Sharpen various dental instruments
	9. Demonstrating how to clean and sterilize hand instruments
	10. Demonstrate how to operate the equipment needed in the
	dental surgery
	11. Demonstrate the simple maintenance of the equipment in
	dental surgery
Human Anatomy and Physiology II	Draw and label the respiratory system
DTH 125	2. Identify various organs of respiration
DTH 125	3. Draw and label the alimentary canal.
	4. Draw and label the mouth, showing the oral part of the
	phyarynx.
	5. Draw and label urogenital system
	6. Draw and label the glands
	7. Draw and label a typical nerve cell
	8. Examine and draw sections from various parts of the nervous
	system
	9. Draw sections from various parts of the nervous system
Tooth Morphology and Tooth Carving II	1. Identify Carving Instruments such as carvers, calliper, as well
DTH 126	as materials like wax, stone, and plaster.
	2. Demonstrate the Proper Handling and Maintenance of
	Instruments.
	3. Demonstrate the Material Preparation and Selection.
	4. Demonstrate the anatomical accuracy in Carving.
	5. Demonstrate aesthetic and functional detailing.
	6. Demonstrate the difference between deciduous and permanent
	teeth based on their unique anatomical features, size, shape,
	and eruption patterns.

	 Identify specific characteristics of each type of tooth within both dentitions (incisors, canines, molars) to understand their functional and developmental roles. Describe Carving and Replicating Tooth Anatomy Demonstrate the ability to visualize and replicate the dimensions of each tooth in proportion to its natural size, ensuring accurate scaling. Demonstrate the use of calipers, rulers, and other dental measurement tools to ensure that carved teeth match the desired dimensions and maintain anatomical accuracy. Demonstrate measurement techniques to maintain scale across multiple carvings, understanding the importance of symmetry and proportionality. Replication of Tooth. Demonstrate the Tooth anatomy at Various Scales Identify key occlusal landmarks, such as cusps, fossae, grooves, and ridges, on each type of tooth (e.g., molars, premolars) and understand their role in occlusion. Demonstrate carving of occlusal surfaces that accurately reflect natural occlusal relationships, such as aligning cusps, grooves, and ridges to ensure realistic contact points. Demonstrate carving of occlusal anatomy that allows for smooth articulation without interference, simulating natural bite and movement. Demonstrate the Application of Occlusal Concepts to Clinical Scenarios
	17. Demonstrate the Application of Occlusal Concepts to Clinical Scenarios
Oral Hygiene DTH 127	Identify types of toothbrushes
	2. Identify the plane of tooth brushing using dental model

	3. Identify the properties of natural and nylon bristles for
	toothbrushes. e.g.:
	• Hard,
	Medium
	• Soft
	4. Demonstrate how to care for tooth brush
	5. Identify the composition of dentifrices e.g.:
	Abrasive Solvent
	 Detergent
	• Fillers
	 Flavouring
	Chemical Additives Etc.
	6. Create a dentifrice albu
	7. Demonstrate the various tooth brushing methods
	8. Identify areas that require emphasis during tooth brushing
	9. Create a tooth brush album
	10. Identify the traditional method of tooth cleaning
	11. Create an album for types of chewing sticks
	12. Identify inter-dental teeth cleaning agents
	13. Demonstrate how to use inter-dental teeth cleaning agents
	14. Identify the device used for oral irrigation
	15. Demonstrate mouth rinsing and oral irrigation.
	16. Identify mouth wash agents
	17. Identify disclosing agents
0.14	18. Identify common oral hygiene related problems
Oral Anatomy	1. Draw the stages of the development of facial structure
DTH 211	2. Draw the transverse section of a tooth

	3. Draw the stages of the embryonic development of oral
	structure
	4. Draw the vertical/cross section of the foetus formation from
	the drawing
	5. Observe the oral structures
	6. Draw the vertical/cross section of the foetus formation
	7. Draw the stages of tooth formation
	8. Draw the cross-sectional tissues of the teeth
	9. Observe the various stages in 2.1, 2.4, 2.5 and 2.6
	10. Draw and label:
	Oral Cavity
	Mandible
	Maxillae
	A Tooth
	A tooth in cross-section
	11. Lateral view of the skull showing the salivary glands
Phantom Head	Demonstrate components of the phantom head
DTH 212	2. Identify the various types of instrument used in periodontal
	debridement
	3. Demonstrate instrument grasps
	4. Demonstrate angulation in dental Instrumentation
	5. Demonstrate the Difference between angulation in
	scaling and root planning procedures
	6. Demonstrate the process of Removing deposits from
	teeth applying angulation
	7. Illustrate Preparation of the phantom head for practical
	8. Demonstrate how to Fix and adjust the phantom head to the
	workbench for easy operation

	9. Demonstrate Sort and set the instruments required for the
	scaling and polishing procedure
	10. Illustrate the Selection of the correct instruments for removing
	deposits on the teeth of the phantom head
	11. Demonstrate the Removal of deposits from the teeth of the
	phantom head, using the correct instruments above, at the right
	position, with the correct grasps and motions
	12. Demonstrate Selection of the correct instruments for polishing
	the teeth of the phantom head.
	13. Demonstrate Polishing teeth of the phantom head after
	successful removal of deposits using the instruments above
	14. Demonstrate the application precaution to prevent injuries to
	the soft and hard tissue during scaling and polishing.
Oral Health Education	Identify material used for cleaning the mouths
DTH 213	2. Identify the various types of toothbrushes
	3. Demonstrate the various tooth brushing techniques
	4. Demonstrate the uses of wood point and dental floss
	5. Identify the various types of chewing sticks
	6. Demonstrate the uses of wood point and dental floss
	7. Demonstrate the uses of the chewing stick
	8. Identify self-cleansings fruits
Dental Instrumentation I	Identify the appropriate instruments for examination of oral
DTH 215	cavity
	2. Determine how to use probe to determine the depth of
	periodontal pocket
	3. Determine the presence of tooth decay using the caries probe
	4. Transfer material to and from the oral cavity using tweezers
	5. Identify the instruments for gross scaling
	6. Set the instruments ready for use
	·

	7. Apply the jacquettes 1,2 and 3
	8. Apply the hoe scalers
	9. Apply the chisel scalers
	10. Apply the gross excavators
	11. Apply the other instruments from gross scaling
	12. Identify instruments for fine scaling
	13. Set the instruments ready for use
	14. Apply the drury scalers
	15. Apply the fine excavator
	16. Apply the fine chisel
	17. Apply the curettes
	18. Apply the sickles
	19. Apply other fine scaling instruments
	20. Identify equipment for tooth polishing
	21. Identify instruments for tooth polishing
	22. Attach the instruments to their appropriate equipment
	23. Carryout tooth Polishing
Dental Radiography I	Demonstrate patient positioning in different oral x- ray
DTH 216	investigation.
	2. Demonstrate film placement and angulation procedure using
	the bisecting and paralleling techniques
	3. Identify the various protective measures against radiation
	hazards
First Aid and Dental Emergencies	Demonstrate procedures for taking vital signs
	2. Simulate the management of the following:
DTH 221	Shock
	• Fainting
	Epileptic seizures
	Asthmatic attack
	- Asimilatic attack

	3. Demonstrate how to manage fractures
	4. Demonstrate the application of dressing
	5. Simulation of the management of unconsciousness
Anatomy of Head and Neck	Draw and label the human skull
DTH 222	2. Identify the bones of the skull
	3. Identify facial bones,
	4. Draw the base of the skull.
	5. Identify the foramen
	6. Identify the foramen and processes on the human jaw
	7. Draw well labelled diagram blood and nerve supply to the
	face.
	8. Identify:
	 Facial Muscles
	 Muscles of Mastication
	9. Identify TMJ
	10. Draw the TMJ
	11. Draw a well label diagram of mandible
	12. Identify the facial muscles
	13. Identify the taste buds on the tongue
	14. Draw a well labelled diagram of the tongue
	15. Identify the location of tonsils in the mouth
	16. Identify bones of the neck
	17. Draw and label bones of the neck
Principles of Sterilization	1. Identify pathogens (bacteria, viruses, fungi) relevant to dental
DTH 223	settings
~	2. Identify the common infections that can be transmitted throug
	dental procedures
	3. Identify cleaning, disinfection, and sterilization, materials and equipment

	4. Demonstrate methods of sterilization			
	5. Demonstrate the Techniques to prevent contamination			
	6. Demonstrate methods of Handling Contaminated Instruments.			
	7. Identify methods of Environmental Hygiene.			
Dental Materials	Identify the common dental materials.			
DTH 224	2. Identify soft paste and hard paste			
	3. Identify materials used for the following processes			
	4. impression taking			
	5. casting of models			
	6. dental prost			
	7. Demonstrate the application of dental materials			
	8. Demonstrate manipulation of dental materials			



HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA (HND)

DENTAL THERAPY

CURRICULUM AND COURSE SPECIFICATIONS

PLOT B, BIDA ROAD, P.M.B.2239, KADUNA -NIGERIA

OCTOBER, 2024

FOREWARD

With a growing demand for oral health services, the need for a well-trained dental technologist has become increasingly apparent.

The Higher National Diploma in Dental Therapy curriculum is designed to produce skilled dental technologists who can contribute significantly to oral healthcare in Nigeria.

This curriculum, developed to meet the evolving needs of the dental profession, provides a solid foundation in dental and clinical practice. It is designed to equip students with the necessary knowledge and skills to provide quality dental care,

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to Dental Therapist Registration Board of Nigeria (DThRBN) who sponsored and contributed to the review of this non-terminal curriculum. Their expertise and dedication have been instrumental in shaping this curriculum

I hope that this curriculum will be implemented effectively to produce competent dental technologists who can make a positive impact on oral health in Nigeria.

Prof. Idris M. Bugaje, **EXECUTIVE SECRETARY,** NBTE Kaduna.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD	171
TABLE OF CONTENTS	172
GENERAL INFORMATION	174
CURRICULUM TABLE	183
YEAR ONE SEMESTER ONE:	
Medical Emergencies	187
Dental Pharmacology	193
Primary Oral Health Care	197
Paedondontics	202
Introduction to Orthodontics	209
Dental Radiography II	215
Dental Care of Hospital Patients	221
Clinical Practice I	227
YEAR ONE SEMESTER TWO:	
Clinical Practice II	232
Anaesthesiology	235
Dental Instrumentation II	240
Oral Pathology	244
Oral Diagnosis and Treatment Planning	250
Introduction to Dental Gerontology	254
Care of Patients with Special Needs	259
Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	264
YEAR TWO SEMESTER ONE:	
Contemporary Dentistry	270

Oral Health Education and Promotion	275
Dental Office Management	281
Periodolntology	286
Cariology	293
Clinical Practice III	300
YEAR TWO SEMESTER TWO:	
Ethics and Professional Practice in Dental Therapy	304
Clinical Practice	308
Communicable and Non-Communicable Disease	311
PRACTICAL MANUAL	315
LIST OF EQUIPMENT	324
LIST OF PARTICIPANTS	331

GENERAL INFORMATION

1.0 TITLE OF THE PROGRAMME: The title of the programme is Higher National Diploma Dental Therapy

2.0 GOAL AND OBJECTIVES OF THE PROGRAMME

2.1 Goal: The Higher National Diploma (HND) programme in Dental Therapy is designed to produce dental therapy (technologist) who will be capable of applying practical skills and knowledge in complementing the role of dentists in dental care programmes.

2.2 Objectives: At the end of the programme, the student should be able to:

- 1. Manage medical emergencies in the dental clinic
- 2. Manage and administer drugs in dental practice.
- 3. Manage common oral diseases in primary health care centres.
- 4. Manage periodontal diseases.
- 5. Manage patients with dental anomalies
- 6. Carryout radiographic techniques and production
- 7. Provide patient care in hospitals
- 8. Carryout Dental Therapy clinical practice
- 9. Provide Dental anaesthetic care
- 10. Use advance dental instruments and equipment
- 11. Manage diseases of the oral cavity.
- 12. Provide Dental diagnosis and treatment plan
- 13. Diagnose and manage dental issues in older adults
- 14. Provide dental care to patients with special needs.
- 15. Apply digital dentistry.
- 16. Provide oral health education and promotion.
- 17. Carryout dental office management.
- 18. Manage dental caries
- 19. Apply ethical principles and professionalism in dental practice
- 20. Recognize/Control communicable and non-communicable diseases

3.0 ENTRY REQUIREMENTS:

The general entry requirements for the HND in Dental Therapy are:

- a. Candidates for the programme shall possess minimum of five (5) credits passes in NABTEB/WAEC/GCE/SSCE/NECO or its equivalents in not more than two sittings to include: English Language, Mathematics, and any three from Biology/Health Science, Physics and Chemistry.
- b. ND in Dental Therapy with minimum of lower credit.

4.0 STAFFING REQUIREMENT

4.1 Headship of the Department:

The HOD should not be lower than a Senior Lecturer in rank. He should be qualified in the discipline/field of study and have post-qualification cognate experiences in industry, teaching and educational management to guarantee to the Board that the department is being efficiently and effectively run. He should possess at least a good HND /B.Sc Degree with relevant Postgraduate Degree and also be a registered Dental Therapist with the Dental Therapists' Registration Board of Nigeria.

4.2 Core Teaching Staff:

At the point of mounting the programme, there should be a minimum of six (6) Lecturers from Lecture II and above with B.Sc. /BDTH/ HND in Dental Therapy, BDS and Higher Degrees in the following areas:

- Dental Therapy
- Public Health
- Social Work
- Health Education

4.3 Technical Staff:

These are technically qualified staff not involved in direct lecturing/instructing, but who provide vital and indispensable services in all facilities used in the implementation of the programme. They possess minimum of Diploma in Dental Surgery Technicians and HND in Dental Therapy

5.0 CAREER AND ACADEMIC PROSPECTS

5.1 Career Prospects

Holders of the HND can work in the following establishments/organizations:

- Hospital
- School
- Dental Clinics
- Industries
- Research Institutes
- Spas
- NGOs

6.0 DURATION

The duration of the programme is two academic sessions consisting of four semesters of 17 weeks each. (15 weeks academic activities and 2 weeks for Registration & Examinations).

7.0 CURRICULUM

- **7.1** The curriculum of the HND programme consists of four main components. These are:
 - i. General Studies/Education
 - ii. Foundation Courses
 - iii. Core Courses
 - iv. Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme (SIWES)

- **7.2** The General Education component shall account for not more than 15% of total contact hours for the programme.
- **7.3 Foundation Courses:** include courses in English Language, Mathematics, and three other subjects, from the sciences humanities or mixtures of both. The number of hours will vary with the programme and may account for about 10-15% of the total contact hours.
- **7.4 Professional Courses**: are courses, which give the student the theory and practical skills needed to practice in his/her field of specialization at the technical level. These may account for between 60-70% of the total contact hours of the programme.
- **7.5 Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme (SIWES)** shall take place during the long vacation following the end of the second semester of the first year. See details on SIWES.

8.0 CURRICULUM STRUCTURE

The structure of the HND programme consists of four semesters of Classroom, Laboratory, Field Trips and Workshop activities in the college and Students' Industrial Work Experience Scheme at the end of second semester of the first year is not compulsory.

Each semester shall be of 17 weeks duration made up as follows: 15 contact weeks of teaching, lecture recitation and practical exercises, etc and 2 weeks for tests, quizzes, examinations and registration.

9.0 ACCREDITATION

The National Board for Technical Education shall accredit the programme before the diplomates can be awarded the Higher National Diploma certificates. Details about the process of accrediting the programme for the award of the National Diploma are available from the office of the Executive Secretary, National Board for Technical Education, Plot "B", Bida Road, P.M.B. 2239, Kaduna, Nigeria.

10.0 CONDITION FOR AWARD OF HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA

- **10.1** Conditions for the award of Higher National Diploma include the following:
 - a. Satisfactory performance in all prescribed course work which may include class work, tests, quizzes
 - b. Pre-internship (competency) examination by Dental Therapists' Registration Board of Nigeria (DThRBN)
 - c. Satisfactory performance at one year internship programme
 - d. Satisfactory performance at all semester examinations

- e. Satisfactory completion of final year project work
- f. Candidates should have completed a minimum of between 93 to 103 semester credit units.

10.2 Classification of Diploma

National Diploma (ND) shall be awarded in four classes as follows:

Distinction - CGPA of 3.50 and above
Upper Credit - CGPA of 3.00 – 3.49
Lower Credit - CGPA of 2.50 – 2.99
Pass - CGPA of 2.00 – 2.49

10.3 Grading of Courses:

Courses shall be graded as follows:

MARKED	LETTER	WEIGHT	ING
RANGE	GRADE		
	GRADE		
75% and	A	4.	.00
above			
70% – 74%	AB	3.	.50
65% - 69%	В	3	.25
60% - 64%	BC	3	.00
55% - 59%	C	2	.75
50% - 54%	CD	2.	.50
45% – 49%	D	2.	.25
40% – 44%	Е	2.	.00
Below 40%	F	C	0.0

11.0 GUIDANCE NOTES FOR TEACHERS

- 11.1 The new curriculum is drawn in unit courses. This is in keeping with the provisions of the National Policy on Education which stress the need to introduce the semester credit units which will enable a student who so wishes to transfer the units already completed in an institution of similar standard from which he/she is transferring.
- 11.2 In designing the units, the principle of the modular system by product has been adopted, and each of the professional modules, when completed provides the student with Officers/technician operative skills, which can be used for employment purposes or self-reliance.
- 11.3 As the success of the credit unit system depends on the articulation of the programme between the institutions and industry, the curriculum content has been written in behavioral objectives, so that it is clear to all the expected performance of the student who successfully completed some of the courses or the diplomates of the programme. This is slight departure in the presentation of the performance-based curriculum which requires the conditions under which the performance is expected to be carried out and the criteria for the acceptable levels of performance. It is a deliberate attempt to further involve the staff of the department teaching the programme to write their own curriculum stating the conditions existing in their institution under which performance can take place and to follow that with the criteria for determining an acceptance level of performance.

The Academic Board of the institution may vet departmental submission on the final curriculum. Our aim is to continue to see to it that a solid internal evaluation system exists in each institution for ensuring minimum standard and quality of education in the programmes offered throughout the Polytechnic/Monotechnic system.

11.4 The teaching of the theory and practical work should, as much as possible, be integrated. Practical exercises especially those in professional courses and laboratory work should not be taught in isolation from the theory. For each course, there should be at least balance of theory to practical in the ratio of 70:30.

11.5 ASSESSMENT:

	Classwork Works	/practical	&Laboratory	Total
Examination				70
CA				30
Total				100

12.0 PRACTICAL LOGBOOK

A personal Logbook to be kept by each student shall contain all day-to-day, weekly summary and semester summary of all the practical activities from day one to the end of the programme. This is to be checked, marked, endorsed and recorded by the lecturers/technologists concerned at the end of every week.

13.0 FINAL YEAR PROJECT

Final year students in this programme are expected to carry out a project work. This could be on individual basis or group work of not more than three students per group, but reporting must be undertaken individually. The project should, as much as possible be related to the programme. Project reports should be well presented and should be properly supervised. The departments should make their own arrangement of schedules for project work.

CURRICULUM TABLE

YEAR I SEMESTER I

COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	CU	СН
STM 311	Bacteriology	1	2	3	3
NUD 311	Human Nutrition I	2	1	3	3
GNS 401	Communication in English III	2	-	2	2
MSQ 311	Quality Assurance Assessor (QAA)	-	-	-	2
DTH 311	Medical Emergencies	1	1	2	2
DTH 312	Dental Pharmacology	2	-	2	2
DTH 313	Primary Oral Health Care	1	1	2	2
DTH 314	Paedodontics	2	1	3	3
DTH 315	Introduction to Orthodontics	1	1	2	2
DTH 316	Dental Radiography II	1	2	3	3
DTH 317	Dental Care of Hospital Patients	1	1	2	2
DTH 318	Clinical Practice I	1	2	3	3
	Total	15	12	27	29

YEAR I SEMESTER II

COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	CU	СН
NUD 321	Human Nutrition II	2	1	3	3
GNS 323	Medical Psychology	2	-	2	2
ENT 326	Practice of Entrepreneurship I	2	2	2	4
MSQ 321	Quality Assurance Assessor (QAA)	-	-	-	2
DTH 321	Clinical Practice II	-	3	3	3
DTH 322	Anesthesiology	1	1	2	2
DTH 323	Dental Instrumentation II	1	1	2	2
DTH 324	Oral Pathology	2	1	3	3
DTH 325	Oral Diagnosis and Treatment Planning	1	1	2	2
DTH 326	Introduction to Dental Gerontology	1	1	2	2
DTH 327	Care of Patients with Special Needs	1	1	2	2
DTH 328	Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	2	-	2	2
	SIWES	-	-	-	-
	Total	15	12	25	29

YEAR II SEMESTER I

COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	CU	СН
STA 416	Medical Statistics	2	-	2	2
GNS 401	Communication in English IV	2	-	2	2
ENT 416	Practice of Entrepreneurship II	2	2	4	4
DTH 411	Contemporary Dentistry	1	2	3	3
DTH 412	Oral Health Education and Promotion	1	1	2	2
DTH 413	Dental Office Management	1	1	2	2
DTH 414	Periodontology	1	1	2	2
DTH 415	Cariology	1	1	2	2
DTH 416	Clinical Practice III	-	3	3	3
DTH 417	Seminar	-	-	2	2
	Total	11	11	24	24

YEAR II SEMESTER II

COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	L	P	CU	СН
NUD 322	Clinical Diseases and Diet Therapy I (Clinical Diseases and Diet Therapy II)	3	-	3	3
DTH 421	Ethics and Professional Practice in Dental Therapy	3	-	3	3
DTH 422	Clinical Practice 1V	-	3	3	3
DTH 423	Communicable and Non-Communicable Diseases	2	-	2	2
DTH 424	Project	-	-	6	6
	Total	8	3	17	17

NOTE: Borrowed/Foundation/General Courses in *italics* above are to be obtained from the respective programme curricula. KEY:

L= Lecture hours, T= Tutorial hours, P= Practical hour

YEAR I SEMESTER I

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Medical Emergencies	COURSE CODE: DTH 311	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1		
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE	PRACTICAL: 1		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with knowledge and skills of managing medical emergencies in the dental clinic

- 1.0: Understand Medical Emergencies
- 2.0: Know Prevention Techniques for Medical Emergencies
- 3.0: Understand the need to Prepare for Medical Emergencies
- 4.0: Know the documentation during Medical Emergencies in Clinical Practice
- 5.0: Know Collaboration with Medical Teams During Emergencies

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Medical Emergencies	COURSE CODE: DTH 311	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1		
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE	PRACTICAL: 1		

COUR	SE SPECIFICATION: T	THEORETICAL AND PR	ACTICAL	1		
GOAL	: This course is designed to	provide the students with	knowledge ar	nd skills of managing	medical emergencies i	n the dental
clinic						
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CO	ONTENT	
Gener	al Objective 1.0: Know Me	edical Emergencies				
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome		
1-2	1.1 Define medical	Explain medical	Textbooks			
	emergencies in	emergencies in dental	Journals			
	dental settings	settings	Charts			
	1 2 List trunca medical		Visual			
	1.2 List types medical emergencies and	Explain types medical	Aids			
	their clinical	emergencies and their	Whiteboard			
	manifestations	clinical manifestations	Computer			
			Internet			
	1.3 Describe	Explain characteristics	Marker			
	characteristics of the	of the following:	Projector			
	following:	• life-threatening				
	 life-threatening conditions 	conditions				
	sudden onset in	• sudden onset in				
	otherwise	otherwise healthy individuals				
	healthy	individuals				
	individuals					

Gener	ral Objective 2.0: Know Pre	vention Techniques for M	ledical Emerge	encies		
3-5	2.1 Describe how to take	Explain how to take	Textbooks	Take medical	Guide student to:	Thermometer
	the medical history of	the medical history of	Journals	history of a patient		
	patients	patients	Whiteboard		Take medical	Sphygmoma
			Marker	Role-play	history of a patient	no-meter
	2.2 Explain types of stress-	Explain types of stress-	Computer	activities for		
	reduction measures	reduction measures	Projector	handling high-risk	Role-play activities	Dental unit
			Internet	patients	for handling high-	
	2.3 Explain patient	Explain patient	Charts		risk patients.	
	reassurance as a	reassurance as a		Identify essential		
	preventive approach	preventive approach		drugs for patients		
				with medical	Identify essential	
	2.4 Explain patient	Explain patient		emergencies	drugs for patients	
	communication and	communication and			with medical	
	stress reduction	stress reduction			emergencies	
	2.5 Explain essential	Explain essential drugs				
	drugs for patients	for patients with				
	with medical	medical emergencies				
	emergencies					
	al Objective 3.0: Know how					
6-8	3.1 Explain emergency	Explain emergency	Medical		Guide student to:	First Aid kit
	equipment e.g.:	equipment e.g.:	journals	Demonstrate	Demonstrate proper	Simulation
	 Automated 	AED	Textbooks	proper use of	use of emergency	tools
	Emergency	 Oxygen tank 	Journals	emergency devices	devices and	
	Defibrillator	• Epinephrine	Whiteboard	and equipment	equipment	Medical
	(AED)	injectors	Marker			emergency
	 Oxygen tank 		Computer			kit
	 Epinephrine 		Projector	Simulation	Simulation	
	injectors		Internet			

	3.2 Explain technology- assisted hospital contacts3.3 List components of a comprehensive emergency kit	Explain technology- assisted hospital contacts Explain components of a comprehensive emergency kit	Charts	 Cardiopulmo nary Resuscitation (CPR) Positioning Clear of the air way 	 Cardiopulmo nary Resuscitation (CPR) Positioning Clear of the air way 	
	3.4 Describe how to access nearby hospitals via emergency service technology	Explain how to access nearby hospitals via emergency service technology				
	 3.5 Explain management of common emergencies in dental clinic: Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR) Positioning Clear of the air way 	Explain management of common emergencies in dental clinic:				
Genera 9-10	al Objective 4.0: Know doo 4.1 Explain management		cal Emergencie Textbooks	es in Clinical Practice	Guide students to:	Patient
9-10	of medical emergencies	Explain management of medical emergencies	Documenta tion tools	Record a complete emergency	Record a complete emergency	records
	4.2 Explain how to	Explain how to	Journals	response :	response :	Sample
	document medical emergencies:	document medical emergencies:	Whiteboard Marker	Pre- documentation	Pre- documentation	emergency forms

	 Predocumentation On-site documentation Postdocumentation 4.3 Describe benefits of 	 Predocumentation On-site documentation Postdocumentation Explain benefits of	Computer Projector Internet Charts	 On-site documentation Post- documentation Write a report Demonstrate 	 On-site documentation Post- documentation Write a report Demonstrate 	
	proper documentation	proper documentation		record-keeping practice	record-keeping practice	
	4.4 Explain record-	Explain record-				
	keeping practice in	keeping practice in				
	medical emergencies	medical emergencies				
Genera	al Objective 5.0: Understar	nd how to collaborate Effe	ctively with M	ledical Teams during	Emergencies	
11-12	5.1 Explain emergency	Explain emergency	Textbooks		Guide students to:	First Aid Kit
	communication	communication	Journals	Role play medical	Role play medical	
	protocols with	protocols with	Whiteboard	team collaboration	team collaboration	
	healthcare providers	healthcare providers	Marker			
			Computer			
	5.2 Explain how to	Explain how to	Projector			
	coordinate emergency	coordinate emergency	Internet			
	procedures with	procedures with	Charts			
	healthcare teams	healthcare teams				
	5.3 Explain collaboration	Explain collaboration				
	techniques for	techniques for				
	emergency response	emergency response				
	teams	teams				

EVALUATION: C.A: 40% EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Dental Pharmacology	COURSE CODE: DTH 311	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE	PRACTICAL: 0		

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of drugs management and administration in dental practice.

- 1.0 Understand drug groupings.
- 2.0 Understand drug management, storage, labeling, and prescription.
- 3.0 Understand the management of complications arising from drug use
- 4.0 Know national and international drug regulations in dental practice.

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY					
COURSE	: Dental Pharmacology	COURSE CODE: DTH 311	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
		CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR:	SEMESTER:	PRE-REQUISITE	PRACTICAL: 0		
COLIDSE SDECIFICATION: THEODETICAL AND DDACTICAL					

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of drug management and administration in dental practice

General Objective 1.0: Understand drug groupings.

THEOR	ETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTI	ENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-2	1.1 Define drug groupings1.2 Explain types of drug	Explain drug groupings Explain types of drug	Textbooks Journals Internet			
	groupings: • Analgesics • Antiseptics • Antibiotics • Anesthetics etc.	groupings	Computer Projector Whiteboard Marker Charts			
	1.3 Explain examples of common drugs in each group	Explain examples of common drugs in each group				
	1.4 Explain the relevance of each drug group in dentistry	Explain the relevance of each drug group in dentistry				

General	Objective 2.0: Understand drug 1	nanagement, storage, lab	eling, and prescription.
3-5	2.1 Explain drug safety	Explain drug safety	Textbooks
	classifications	classifications	Journals
			Internet
	2.2 Describe proper storage	Explain proper storage	Computer
	methods	methods.	Whiteboard
			Marker
	2.3 Explain proper drug	Explain proper drug	Sample drug
	labelling in dental practice	labelling in dental practice	labels
	2.4 Explain drug prescription		Storage
	in dental practice	Explain drug	containers
	_	prescription in dental	
		practice	
General	Objective 3.0: Understand the m	anagement of complication	ons arising from drug use
6-8	3.1 Define drug complications	Explain drug	Textbooks
		complications	Journals
	3.2 List potential		Internet
	complications associated	Explain potential	Computer
	with drug use:	complications	Whiteboard
	Allergic reactions	associated with drug	Marker
	Adverse side effects	use:	Emergency
		• Allergic reactions	protocol
		 Adverse side 	manuals
		effects	
	3.3 Explain common reactions	Explain common	
	related to specific drugs:	reactions related to	
	I and the second	· C' 1	
	 Antibiotics 	specific drugs:	
	AntibioticsAnaesthetics	• Antibiotics	

	3.4 Explain emergency	Explain emergency			
	management procedures in	management procedures			
	3.3 above	in 3.3 above			
General (Objective 4.0: Know national and	d international drug regul	ations in denta	l practice.	
9-10	4.1 Explain National and	Explain National and	Regulatory		
	International drug	International drug	documents		
	regulation	regulation	Textbooks		
			Journals		
	4.2 Explain relevant legal	Explain relevant legal	Internet		
	guidelines for drug	guidelines for drug	Whiteboard		
	administration	administration	Marker		
	 Nigerian Dangerous Drugs Act (DDA) WHO regulations 	 Nigerian Dangerous Drugs Act (DDA) WHO regulations 	Computer		
	in prescribing and	Explain ethical and professional responsibilities in prescribing and managing drugs.			

EVALUATION: CA: 30% EXAMINATION: 70%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Primary Oral Health Care	COURSE CODE: DTH 313	CREDIT UNIT:	2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1					
YEAR: 1 SEMESTER: 1	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1					

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills to manage oral diseases in primary health care centres.

- 1.0 Know common oral diseases and their diagnosis
- 2.0 Understand Oral Health Screenings and Manage Common Oral Diseases in the Community
- 3.0 Understand preventive and control measures for dental health
- 4.0 Understand principles of epidemiology in oral health
- 5.0 Understand community-based oral health program design for prevalent dental issues

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills to manage oral diseases in primary health care centres

General Objective 1.0: Know common oral diseases and their diagnosis

THEOR	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities	
1-2	1.1 Define oral health	Explain oral health	Textbooks		Guide the students	Oral
			Journals		to:	examination
	1.2 Explain the significance	Explain the	Diagrams	Conduct oral	Conduct oral	set
	of oral health	significance of oral	Whiteboard	examinations in a	examinations in a	
		health	Marker	community setting	community setting	Mobile
			Computer			Dental chair
	1.3 Describe the anatomy of	Explain the anatomy	Internet	Identify dental	Identify dental	
		of the mouth,		issues, with a focus	issues, with a focus	
	and gingivae	including teeth and		on plaque and	on plaque and	
		gingivae		gingivitis	gingivitis	
				identification	identification	
	1.4 Explain the causes	Explain the causes				
	(aetiology) of periodontal	(aetiology) of		Conduct community	Conduct	
	diseases and dental caries	periodontal diseases		oral screenings	community oral	
		and dental caries			screenings	
	1.5.64-4					
	1.5 State signs of inflamed	Explain signs of		Identify dental	Identify dental	
	gingivae	inflamed gingivae		plaque, calculus, and	plaque, calculus,	

	1.6 Describe the composition	Explain the		caries in the oral	and caries in the	
	of dental plaque and calculus	composition of dental		cavity.	oral cavity.	
	carcurus	plaque and calculus				
	1.7 Explain pathology of common oral conditions	Explain pathology of common oral conditions.				
	1.8 Explain common oral health issues	Explain common oral health issues.				
	1.9 Explain the diagnosis procedure of oral diseases	Explain the diagnosis procedure of oral diseases				
General (Objective 2.0: Understand preve	entive and control meas	ures for dental	health		•
6-7	2.1 Describe preventive and	Explain preventive	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Pamphlets
	control measures for dental	and control measures	Whiteboard	Carry out	Carry out	Charts
	diseases e.g.: hygiene and	for common dental	Marker	community-oriented	community-	
	dietary practices	diseases e.g.: hygiene	Internet	oral health education	oriented oral health	
		and dietary practices	Projector Computer	session	education session.	
	2.2 Explain steps for	Explain steps for	Health			
	community-based disease	community-based	promotion			
	prevention	disease prevention	materials			
	2.3 Explain how to develop an oral health education program for community	Explain an oral health education program for community dental	Charts			
	dental disease prevention	disease prevention				

	2.4 Explain the importance of	Explain the				
	community health	importance of				
	education in oral health.	community health				
		education in oral				
		health.				
General (Objective 3.0: Understand princ	iples of epidemiology in	n oral health			
	3.1 Define epidemiology	Explain epidemiology	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Sample
8-10			Journals	Conduct a survey in	Conduct a survey in	Survey
	3.2 Explain common	Explain common	Internet	a community to	a community to	forms
	epidemiological terms,	epidemiological	Computer	gather	gather	Data
	such as:	terms, such as	Projector	epidemiological data	epidemiological	collection
	• Incidence,	Incidence,	Whiteboard	on oral diseases	data on oral	tools
	 Prevalence 	 Prevalence 	Marker		diseases	
	• Endemic	 Endemic 	Epidemiology	Analyze the data.	Analyze the data.	
	Pandemic	 Pandemic 	charts			
	3.3 Explain factors influencing					
		influencing the				
	diseases:	epidemiology of				
	 Dental caries 	dental diseases:				
	 Periodontal disease 	 Dental caries 				
		 Periodontal 				
		disease				
	3.4 Explain the procedure for					
		Explain the procedure				
	epidemiological data	for collecting and				
		analyzing				
		epidemiological data				

General (General Objective 4.0: Understand community-based oral health program design for prevalent dental issues									
11-12	4.1 Explain community-based	Explain community-	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Presentation				
	oral health program	based oral health	Marker	Design community	Design community	kit				
		program	Internet	based oral health	based oral health					
	4.2 Explain the methods for		Computer	programme	programme	Sample				
	program design and	Explain the methods	Projector			Feedback				
	implementation	for program design	Textbooks	Carryout	Carryout	forms				
		and implementation.	Case studies	implementation of	implementation of					
	4.3 Explain basic package for			BPOC	BPOC	Sample				
	oral health care (BPOC)	Explain basic package				Standing				
		for oral health care				order of				
		(BPOC)				ICOH/				
						WHO				

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Paedodontics	COURSE CODE: DTH 314	CREDIT UNIT:	3						
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	2						
YEAR: 1 SEMESTER: 1	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1						

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills of managing dental diseases in children.

- 1.0 Understand the dental anatomy of child patients
- 2.0 Know effective management of child patients
- 3.0 Understand comprehensive examinations of the oral cavity in paediatric patients
- 4.0 Understand conservative dental procedures for children
- 5.0 Understand extraction procedures for children

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Pedodontics	COURSE CODE: DTH 314	CREDIT UNIT: 3							
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 2							
YEAR: 1 SEMESTER: 1	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1							

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills of managing dental diseases in children.

General Objective 1.0: Understand the dental anatomy of child patients

THEOI	THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-3		Explain Pedodontics	Textbooks Visual aids	T.1		Dental models
	1.2 Explain types of teeth in deciduous dentition	Explain types of teeth in deciduous dentition.	Whiteboard Computer Internet	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Identify tooth types and anatomy in deciduous dentition.	Visual aids
	· ·	Explain anatomy of deciduous dentition	Projector Marker	Identify the anatomical structures	Identify the anatomical structures	Charts
	and tooth eruption	Explain root formation and tooth eruption relationships		of deciduous dentition.	of deciduous dentition.	
	* *	Explain eruption dates for deciduous teeth				

	 1.6 Explain the age for space establishment for permanent teeth 1.7 Explain conditions leading to space loss in deciduous teeth 1.8 Explain the need for tooth retention before exfoliation in children. 	Explain the age for space establishment for permanent teeth Explain conditions leading to space loss in deciduous teeth Explain the need for tooth retention before exfoliation in children.				
Genera	l Objective 2.0: Know effecti	ve management of child	patients			1
4	2.1 Describe typical reactions of children to the dental environment 2.2 Explain motivational techniques to manage these reactions 2.3 Describe management strategies to sustain a child's attention during dental procedures.	Explain typical reactions of children to the dental environment Explain motivational	Textbooks Visual aids	Role-play scenarios on motivational strategies: • Cartoons • Mascot	Guide students to: Role-play scenarios on motivational strategies:	Case studies Cartoons Mascot

5-7	3.1 Explain oral	Explain oral	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental
	examination procedure	examination procedure	Visual aids	Conduct oral	Conduct oral	models
	for children	for children	Whiteboard	examinations using	examinations using	Examination
			Computer	child-specific	child-specific	kits
	3.2 List instruments use for	Explain instruments	Internet	instruments on dental	instruments on dental	
	oral examination	use for oral	Projector	models.	models.	
		examination	Marker			
					Demonstrate the use	
	3.3 Explain the use of	Explain the use of		of examination sets	of examination sets	
	examination sets	examination sets				
Seneral	Objective 4.0: Understand co	nservative dental proced	ures for child	lren		
8-11	4.1 Explain oral health	Explain oral health	Textbooks	Perform conservative	Guide students to:	Dental
	presentations in children	presentations in	Visual aids	procedures:	Perform conservative	models
		children	Whiteboard	8	procedures:	
	4.2 Explain possible		Computer	Polishing	S Turring urre	Sealants
	diagnoses e.g.:	Explain possible	Internet	• Temporary	Polishing	
	 Rampant caries 	diagnoses e.g.:	Projector	fillings • Fissure	• Temporary	Temporary
	• Ulcers	 Rampant caries 	Marker	sealants	• Eigenne	fillings
		 Ulcers 		Scarants	• Fissure sealants	materials
		•		Apply rubber dam	Scarants	
	4.3 Define dental caries and	Explain dental caries			Apply rubber dam	Ultrasonic
	its occurrence in children	and its occurrence in			F-FF-J - we con which	Scalers
		children				
						Hand
	4.4 Describe caries control	Explain caries control				instruments
	methods for children	methods for children				
						Mouth gag
						Condenser

4.5 Explain other common	Explain other common		Carver
paediatric conditions	paediatric conditions		
beyond caries	beyond caries		Ball
			burnisher
4.6 Explain control methods	Explain control		
for these conditions	methods for these		Excavator
	conditions		
			Spatula
4.7 Explain treatment	Explain treatment		
options e.g.:	options e.g.:		Mixing slab
• Scaling	 Scaling 		
• Filling	Filling		Air and
Extraction	Extraction		water
			syringe
4.8 Describe required	Explain required		
instruments, materials,	instruments, materials,		Brush
	and drugs		
			Fissure
4.9 Explain indications and	Explain indications and		sealant kit
contraindications for	contraindications for		
materials	materials		UV curing
			light
4.10 Explain rubber dam and	Explain rubber dam		
fissure sealants	and fissure sealants		Protective
			goggle
4.11Explain indications for	Explain indications for		
using stainless steel	using stainless steel		
crowns in children	crowns in children		

	4.12 Explain post-operative	Explain post-operative				
	instructions	instructions				
General	Objective 5.0: Understand ext	raction procedures for ch	ildren	1		
12-15	5.1 Define pain control	Explain pain control	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental
	5.2 Describe pain threshold	Explain pain threshold	Visual aids Whiteboard	Simulate extractions using models to	Simulate extractions using models to	models, Local
	5.3 Describe pain control methods suitable for children	Explain pain control methods suitable for children	Computer Internet Projector Marker	demonstrate techniques and pain management.	demonstrate techniques and pain management.	anaesthesia setup Forceps Elevators
			Marker	Demonstrate "Serial	Demonstrate "Serial	Dental
	5.4 Explain the importance of x-rays in paediatric extractions	Explain the importance of x-rays in paediatric extractions		Extraction" procedures. Administer local anaesthesia to	Extraction" procedures. Administer local anaesthesia to	syringe
	5.5 Define "Serial Extraction" procedures	Explain "Serial Extraction" procedures		children.	children.	
	5.6 Define local anaesthesia	Explain local anaesthesia				
	5.7 Explain procedure for local anaesthesia administration	Explain procedure for local administration				
	5.8 List forceps and elevators for extractions	Explain forceps and elevators for extractions				

5	5.9 Describe appropriate	Explain appropriate		
	instrument grasp and	instrument grasp and		
	technique	technique		
5	5.10 Explain post-extraction	Explain post-extraction		
	care instructions	care instructions		

EVALUATION: CA: 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY						
COURSE: Introduction to Orthodontics	COURSE CODE: DTH 315	CREDIT UNIT: 2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: 1 SEMESTER:1	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of dental anomalies

- 1.0 Understand Terminologies Used in Orthodontics
- 2.0 Know Dental Anomalies in Humans
- 3.0 Understand Procedures to Prevent and Correct Dental Anomalies
- 4.0 Know Orthodontic Appliances

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of dental anomalies

General Objective 1.0: Understand Terminologies Used in Orthodontics

THEOR	THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities	
1-4	1.1 Define orthodontics	Explain orthodontics	Textbooks		Guide students	Art
	 1.2 Define Occlusion 1.3 Describe types of Occlusion: Normal Occlusion Malocclusion Centric Occlusion Static Occlusion Dynamic Occlusion 	Explain occlusion Explain normal types of Occlusion: Normal Occlusion Malocclusion Centric Occlusion Static Occlusion	Journals Internet Computer Projector Whiteboard Marker	Identify facial profiles Sketch facial profiles Draw different classes of malocclusions	to: Identify facial profiles Sketch facial profiles Draw different classes of malocclusions	supplies Dental models Worksheet
		Dynamic Occlusion				

General	 1.4 Explain classifications of malocclusions: Class I, Class II division 1 and 2, Class III. 1.5 Explain different types of facial profiles Objective 2.0: Know Dental A	Explain classifications of malocclusion				
3-8	 2.1 Describe types of malrelations of groups of teeth: Crossbite, Edge-to-edge bite, End-to-end bite, Openbite, Overbite, Overjet, Underjet etc. 	Explain the types of malrelations of groups of teeth:	Textbooks Journals Internet Computer Projector Whiteboard Marker	Identify malrelations and malpositions of teeth Draw malrelationship of 2.1	Identify malrelations and malpositions of teeth	Dental models, Charts Posters Atlas

	2.2 List true as of made = :::: = ::	Elain terms of			
	2.3 List types of malposition	* * *			
		malposition of			
	,	individual teeth:			
	 Linguoversion, 	 Labioversion, 			
	Buccoversion,	 Linguoversion, 			
	 Supraversion, 	 Buccoversion, 			
	• Torsoversion,	 Supraversion, 			
	 Infraversion 	 Torsoversion, 			
	•	 Infraversion 			
	2.4 Define malposition in 2.3	Explain malposition in			
	above	2.3 above			
	2.5 Explain other dental	Explain other dental			
	anomalies (e.g., cleft lip).	anomalies (e.g., cleft			
		lip)			
General O	Objective 3.0: Understand Proc	edures to Prevent and C	orrect Dental A	Anomalies	
9-11	3.1 Explain bad habits	Explain the bad habits	Textbooks		
	leading to different types	-	Journals		
	of malrelations		Internet		
			Computer		
	3.2 Explain bad habits	Explain bad habits	Projector		
	leading to different		Whiteboard		
	malpositions		Marker		
	3.3 Explain how to correct				
	bad habits in 3.1 and 3.2	Explain how to correct			
		bad habits in 3.1 and			
		3.2			
	L	<u> </u>	1		

	3.4 Explain dental anomalies	Explain dental				
	not due to bad habits	anomalies not due to				
	not due to bud nubits	bad habits				
	3.5 Explain how to correct	bad habits				
	anomalies in 3.4					
	anomanes in 5.4	E1-1-1-1				
		Explain how to correct				
		anomalies in 3.4				
	Objective 4.0: Know Orthodon				,	
13-14	4.1 Define orthodontic	Explain orthodontic	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Orthodontic
	appliances:	appliances:	Journals			appliances
	 removable 	 removable 	Internet	Identify components of	Identify	
	appliances	appliances	Computer	orthodontic appliances.	components of	Instruction
	 fixed appliances 	 fixed appliances 	Projector		orthodontic	manuals
	inica appirances	appliances	Whiteboard		appliances.	
	4.2 Explain removable	Explain removable	Marker			
	appliances	appliances				
	apphances	прртинось				
	4.2 Evaloin types of	Explain types of				
	4.3 Explain types of	removable appliance				
	removable appliance	removable appliance				
	4.47	Evaleia commonente ef				
	4.4 List components of	Explain components of				
	removable appliance	removable appliance				
	4.5 Explain fixed appliances	Explain fixed				
		appliances				
	4.6 Explain types of fixed	Explain types of fixed				
	appliances	appliances				
	1 1	Explain components of				
	-	fixed appliances				
	1 **	Explain components of				

correcting anomalies in	Explain appliances for correcting anomalies in 2.1 and 2.3 above		
4.9 Explain care and	Explain care and		
maintenance of	maintenance of		
removable and fixed	removable and fixed		
appliances	appliances		

EVALUATION: CA 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY						
COURSE: Dental Radiography II COURSE CODE: DTH 316 CREDIT UNIT: 3						
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 216 PRACTICAL: 2						

GOAL: This course designed to equip student with the knowledge and skills of radiographic techniques and production

- 1.0 Understand the production of x-rays
- 2.0 Know dental films and their uses
- 3.0 Understand the process of taking and processing dental films
- 4.0 Know the anatomical landmarks on radiographs
- 5.0 Know the pathological features on radiographs
- 6.0 Know how to diagnose faults on radiographs

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY								
COURSE: D	COURSE: Dental Radiography II COURSE CODE: DTH 316 CREDIT UNIT: 3							
		CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	1				
YEAR: I	YEAR: I SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 216 PRACTICAL: 2							
COURSE SI	PECIFICATION: THE	ORETICAL AND PRACTICAL						

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course designed to equip student with the knowledge and skill of radiographic techniques and production

General Objective 1.0: Understand the production of x-rays.

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CONTENT			
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	
1-3	1.1 Describe the components of x-ray machine	Explain the components of x-ray machine Explain the functions of	Journals Internet	Identify the component of the x-ray machine	Guide students to Identify the component of the x-ray machine	X-ray machine Safety equipment	
	 1.2 Explain the functions of x-ray machine 1.3 Explain the process of : x-ray production covering principles of 	x-ray productioncovering principles of	Projector Whiteboard Marker	in x-ray production Identify potential hazards during	Identify potential hazards during	Radiation monitoring devices Lead apron	
	radiation Ionization.	radiation • Ionization.		operation	operation	Lead shield	
	1.4 Enumerate hazards of x- rays to both operators and patients	Explain hazards of x-rays to both operators and patients Explain necessary precautions to prevent				Leaded wall	

	1.5 Outline necessary precautions to prevent x-ray	x-ray hazards in 1.4 above				
	hazards in 1.4 above					
Gener	al Objective 2.0: Know dental fi	lms and their uses		•		
4-5	2.1 Explain types of dental	Explain types of dental	Textbooks		Guide students to	Dental films
	films, such as:	films, such as:	Journals	Identify types of	Identify types of	
	• Intra-Oral	 Intra-Oral 	Internet	dental films	dental films	Film holder
	Extra-oral films	• Extra-oral	Computer	Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
		films	Projector Whiteboard	use of dental films	use of dental films	Radiographic machine
	2.2 Describe types of intra-oral films:	Explain types of intra- oral films:	Marker			
	 Periapical 	 Periapical 				
	Occlusal	Occlusal				
	Bite-wing	Bite-wing				
	2.3 Explain the uses of each	Explain the uses of each				
	type of intra-oral film in 2.2 above	type of intra-oral film in 2.2 above				
	above	2.2 above				
	2.4 Explain the uses of extra-	Explain the uses of				
	oral film	extra-oral films				
Genera	l Objective 3.0: Understand the 1	process of taking and process	cessing dental	films.	<u> </u>	
6-9	3.1 Describe the steps for	Explain the steps for	Textbooks		Guide students to	Radiographic
	taking periapical	taking periapical	Journals	Perform the	Perform the	machine
	radiographs	radiographs	Internet	different	different	
			Projector	radiographic	radiographic	Developing
				techniques	techniques	tank
				(periapical, bite-	(periapical, bite-	

3.2 Explain the techniques for	Explain the techniques	Computer	wing, occlusal) on	wing, occlusal) on	
taking periapical	for taking periapical	Whiteboard	models	models	Fixing solution
radiographs:	radiographs:	Marker	D 4: C1	D 4: C1	
• Density of the image	• Density of the		Practice film processing and	Practice film	
(kilovoltage, current, time, film, distance)	image (kilovoltage,		identify any	processing and identify any	
Bisecting angle	current, time,		necessary	necessary	
technique	film, distance)		corrections during	corrections during	
 Paralleling technique. 	Bisecting angle		development.	development	
Helpful hints	technique				
r	 Paralleling 				
	technique.				
	 Helpful hints 				
3.3 Explain factors employed in taking periapical radiograph	-				
3.4 Explain the process of	Explain the process of				
taking bite-wing and	taking bite-wing and				
occlusal radiographs	occlusal radiographs				
3.5 Outline the procedures for	Explain the procedures				
taking extra-oral	for taking extra-oral				
radiographs	radiographs				
3.6 Describe film processing	Explain film processing				
steps:	steps:				
 Developing 	 Developing 				
• Rinse	• Rinse				

	• Fixing	• Fixing				
	Washing exposed films	 Washing 				
		exposed films				
General	Objective 4.0: Know the anator	nical landmarks on radio	graphs.			
10-11	4.1 Define anatomical landmark	Explain anatomical	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Radiographic
		landmark	Journals	Identify anatomical	Identify anatomical	images
			Charts	landmarks on	landmarks on	
	4.2 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance		actual radiographs	radiographs	Anatomical
	anatomical landmarks in		Marker			charts
	interpreting radiographs	landmarks in	Projector			
		1 0	Computer			
		radiographs				
		Explain key anatomical				
	landmarks visible in	landmarks visible in				
	radiographs	radiographs				
	• Curve of Speed	 Curve of Speed 				
	 Nasal cavity 	 Nasal cavity 				
	 Maxillary sinus 	 Maxillary sinus 				
	 Mandibular canal 	 Mandibular 				
	Mental foramen	canal				
	 Zygomatic arch 	 Mental foramen 				
	 Dental structure (pulp, 	 Zygomatic arch 				
	roots, lamina dura)	 Dental structure 				
		(pulp,roots,				
		lamina dura)				
General	Objective 5.0: Know the pathol	ogical features on radiog	raphs.	•		
12-13	5.1 Explain pathological	Explain pathological	Textbooks		Guide students in	Radiographic
	features on radiographs e.g.:	- 1	Journals		Identify	examples
	• Caries	e.g.:	Radiographic			

	 Periodontal disease Fractures Cyst etc. 5.2 Describe the appearance of restorative materials 5.3 Describe pathological changes in radiographic	Periodontal diseaseFracturesCyst etc.	images Whiteboard Projector Computer Internet Marker	Identify pathological features Differentiate between restorative materials in radiographs	pathological features Differentiate between restorative materials	Diagnostic tools
	images	images in radiographic				
Genera	l Objective 6.0: Know how to di	agnose faults on radiograp	phs	1	•	
	 6.1 Explain common radiographic faults e.g.: Overlapping Elongation Foreshortening Cone-cutting Film density issues 6.2 Explain methods to avoid faults in 6.1 above 6.3 Explain methods to 	Explain common radiographic faults:	Textbooks Journals	Identify faults on radiographic films Demonstrate the techniques to minimize faults in radiographic interpretation	Guide students to: Identify faults on radiographic films Demonstrate the techniques to minimize faults in radiographic interpretation	Radiographic examples Diagnostic tools
	minimize faults in radiographic interpretation	minimize faults in radiographic interpretation				

EVALUATION: CA: 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Dental Care of Hospital Patients	COURSE CODE: DTH 317	CREDIT UNIT:	2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1						
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1									

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills for patient care in hospitals

- 1.0 Understand Common Dental and Related Ailments
- 2.0 Know Symptoms and Preventive Care
- 3.0 Know how to Counsel Patients on Good Oral Hygiene
- 4.0 Know Ethical Standards in Patient Interactions
- 5.0 Know Specific Patient Needs and Management Techniques
- 6.0 Know Treatment Materials and Instruments
- 7.0 Know Nursing Care Procedures

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Dental Care of Hospital Patients	COURSE CODE: DTH 317	CREDIT UNIT:	2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1						
YEAR: I SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1						
COLIDGE OPECIFICATION. THEODETICAL AN	UD DD A CITIC A I								

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills for patient care in hospitals

General Objective 1.0: Understand Common Dental and Related Ailments

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-3	1.1 Explain common dental	Explain common	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Case
	ailments:	dental ailments:	Journals	Identify common	Identify common	samples
	Dry socket	 Dry socket 	Internet	dental ailments in the	dental ailments in	
	 Cleft palate 	 Cleft palate 	Computer	clinic	the clinic	visual aids
	• Palatal abscess etc.	• Palatal abscess etc	Projector Whiteboard			Posters
	1.2 Explain causes, symptoms, and effects of these conditions in 1.1 above	Explain causes, symptoms, and effects of these conditions	Marker			
	1.3 List preventive measures for common dental ailments	Explain preventive measures for common dental ailments				

	l Objective 2.0: Know Symptoms		— 1 1	1	T	1
4	2.1 Describe common	Explain common	Textbooks			
	symptoms of dental-	symptoms of dental-	Journals			
	related conditions:	related conditions:	Internet			
	 Cancrum oris 	 Cancrum oris 	Computer			
	 Gingivitis 	 Gingivitis 	Projector			
	Maxillofacial pain etc.	 Maxillofacial 	Whiteboard			
	_	pain etc.	Marker			
	2.2 Explain preventive care	Explain preventive care	Behavioural			
	strategies for these	strategies for these	guides			
	conditions in 2.1 above	conditions in 2.1 above				
	2.3 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance				
	routine dental visits for	of routine dental visits				
	early detection.	for early detection.				
General	Objective 3.0: Know how to Cou	nsel Patients on Good O	ral Hygiene			•
6-7	3.1 Define counselling	Define counselling	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Dental care
			Journals	Demonstrate	Demonstrate	kits
	3.2 Explain patient counselling	Explain patient	Internet	counselling techniques	counselling	
		counselling	Computer	in delivering oral	techniques in	Dental
			Projector	hygiene practice	delivering oral	models
	3.3 Define oral hygiene	Explain oral hygiene	Whiteboard		hygiene practice	
			Marker			Dietary
	3.4 Describe steps in oral	Explain steps in oral				posters
	hygiene practices	hygiene practices				
	counselling:	counselling:				
	Brushing	Brushing				
	• Flossing etc.	• Flossing etc.				

	3.3 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance			
	diet in oral health.	of diet in oral health.			
General C	Objective 4.0: Know Ethical Star	ndards in Patient Interact	ions		
8-9	4.1 Define healthcare ethics	Explain healthcare	Textbooks		
		ethics	Journals		
			Internet		
	4.2 Explain the relevance of	Explain the relevance	Computer		
	healthcare ethics in patient	of healthcare ethics in	Projector		
	interactions	patient interactions	Whiteboard		
			Marker		
	4.3 Discuss managing	Explain managing			
	uncooperative patients	uncooperative patients			
	4.4 Explain communication	Explain			
	techniques for different	communication			
	patient types	techniques for different			
		patient types			
	D bjective 5.0: Know Specific Pa			ues	
10-11	5.1 Describe characteristics of	-			
	specific patient types	of specific patient types	†		
	(e.g., maxillofacial,	(e.g., maxillofacial,	Textbooks		
	elderly)	elderly)	Journals		
			Internet		
	5.2 Explain management	Explain management	Computer		
	techniques for different	techniques for different	Projector		
	patient needs	patient needs	Whiteboard		
			Marker		
	5.3 Explain necessary care	Explain necessary care			
	equipment for various	equipment for various			
	cases	cases			

General O	bjective 6.0: Know Treatment M	Materials and Instrument	ts			
12-13	6.1 List treatment materials	Explain treatment	Textbooks			
	and their functions (e.g.,	materials and their	Journals			
	splints, sterile tools)	functions (e.g., splints,	Internet			
		sterile tools)	Computer			
			Projector			
	6.2 Describe protocols for	Explain protocols for	Whiteboard			
	material safety	material safety	Marker			
	6.3 Describe safety measures	Explain safety				
	to prevent cross-	measures to prevent				
	contamination.	cross-contamination.				
General O	bjective 7.0: Know Nursing Ca	re Procedures	1			1
14-15	7.1 Define nursing care	Explain nursing care	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Emergency
		Explain nursing care	Journals Internet	Demonstrate nursing	Demonstrate	kits
	procedures for dental	procedures for dental	Computer	procedures under	nursing procedures	Nursing
	patients	patients	Projector	instructor supervision.	under instructor	care plan
	operative and post-	Explain materials for pre-operative and post-operative care	Whiteboard Marker		supervision.	Sterilization supplies
	7.4 Explain nursing procedures under instructor	Explain nursing procedures under				Patient guides
		instructor supervision				

EVALUATION: CA: 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Clinical Practice I	COURSE CODE: DTH 318	CREDIT UNIT:	3					
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	1					
YEAR: 1 SEMESTER: 1 PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 2								

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills of Dental Therapy practice in the clinic

- 1.0 Understand the sanitation and disinfection of the working environment.
- 2.0 Know the procedures for patients clerking and dental charting.
- 3.0 Know the procedures for clinical examination and assessment of the Patient.
- 4.0 Know the technique of removing deposits from surfaces of the teeth.

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY COURSE: Clinical Practice I COURSE CODE: DTH 318 CREDIT UNIT: 3 CONTACT HOURS: 3 THEORETICAL: 1 YEAR: SEMESTER: PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 2

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge and skills of Dental Therapy practice in the clinic

General Objective 1.0: Understand the sanitation and disinfection of the working environment.

THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT			
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome		
1-2	1.1 Describe the dental units and the accessories for treatments	Explain the dental units and the accessories for treatments	Charts	Familiarize with the setting up of the dental clinic	Guide students to: Familiarize with the setting up of the dental clinic	Sanitation kits Disinfectants
	1.2 Explain the need for keeping the dental clinic neat always	Explain the need for keeping the dental clinic neat always	Whiteboard Computer Internet Marker	Identify equipment in the dental clinic	Identify equipment in the dental clinic	
	1.3 Describe how to sanitize and disinfect the working environment			Identify sanitation kits for the clinic	Identify sanitation kits for the clinic	
	1.4 Explain the ideal techniques for sterilization of dental instruments	Explain the ideal techniques for sterilization of dental instruments		Identify disinfectants for cleaning Carry out cleaning of the dental unit	Identify disinfectants for cleaning Carry out cleaning of the dental unit Carry out sterilization	
					of the dental instruments	

		cedures for patients cle		Carry out sterilization of the dental instruments tal charting.		
2.2 Ex	plain patients rking plain dental charting plain vital signs: Blood pressure Temperature Respiration Pulse rate	Explain patients clerking Explain dental charting Explain vital signs:	Textbooks Journals Charts Visual Aids Whiteboard Computer Internet Marker Projector	Carry out patients clerking by documenting outcome of patients diagnosis:	• Extra Oral	Sample Patients folders Vital signs armamentarium

				Pulse rate		
General	Objective 3.0: Know the proc	 edures for clinical exam	 ination and a	ssessment of the Pati	ent.	
5-8	3.1 Explain clinical examinations 3.2 Explain history taking Patient biodata Past medical history Past dental history Social history Social history 3.3 Explain patient's assessment procedures: Extra oral examination Intra oral examination Radiographic examinations etc. 3.4 Explain treatment planning after oral assessment	Explain clinical examinations Explain history taking Patient biodata Past medical history Past dental history Social history Explain patient's assessment procedures Extra oral examination Intra oral examination Radiographic examinations etc. Explain treatment planning after oral assessment	Whiteboard Computer Internet Marker Projector	Document findings from intra oral and extra oral assessment Carry out treatment planning	Guide students to: Document findings from the clinical examination procedures Document findings from intra oral and extra oral assessment Carry out treatment planning	Patient biodata form Past medical history form Past dental history form Social history form
General 9-15	Objective 4.0: Know the tech 4.1 Explain dental	Explain dental	Textbooks	aces of the teeth.	Guide students to:	Instruments for
7 13	deposits:	deposits:	Journals	Carryout removal	Carryout removal	scaling and
	Dental plaqueDental calculus	Dental plaqueDental calculus	Charts Visual Aids	dental deposits	dental deposits	polishing Dental unit

Dental stain etc.	• Dental stain etc.	Whiteboard	(scaling and	(scaling and
		Computer	polishing)	polishing)
4.2 Explain the technique of	Explain the technique	Internet		
removing dental	of removing dental	Marker	Carryout Oral	Carryout Oral
deposits:	deposits:	Projector	Hygiene Instruction	Hygiene Instruction
 Scaling and 	 Scaling and 			
polishing	polishing			
Oral hygiene	 Oral hygiene 			
instruction	instruction			
4.3 Explain the need for nex	Explain the need for			
dental visit	next dental visit			

EVALUATION: C.A: 40%

YEAR I SEMESTER II

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPHY							
COURSE: Clinical Practice II	COURSE CODE: DTH 321	CREDIT UNIT: 3					
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 0					
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 318	PRACTICAL: 3					

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge and skills of dental therapy clinical procedures

- 1.0 Know scaling and polishing
- 2.0 Know out sub-gingival curettage
- 3.0 Know taking and processing of X-ray films

COURS	E: Clinical Practice II	COURSE CO	DE: DTH 321	C	REDIT UNIT:	3
		CONTACT H	OURS: 3	Т	HEORETICAL:	0
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUIS	ITE:	P	RACTICAL:	3
COURS	E SPECIFICATION: THE	ORETICAL AND PRAC	CTICAL	·		
GOAL:	This course is designed to equ	uip students with the kno	wledge and skills	of dental therapy clini	ical procedures	
General	Objective 1.0: Know how to	carry out scaling and po	olishing			
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CO	NTENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-5				Carryout scaling and polishing		Instruments for scaling and polishing
	l Objective 2.0: Know how t	o carry out sub-gingival	curettage			Dental unit
5-10				Carry out sub- gingival curettage	Guide students to: Carry out subgingival curettage	Instruments for scaling and polishing
						Dental unit

			Guide students to:	X-ray
		Carryout x-ray procedure	Carryout x-ray	machines and it's accessories
		•	films	X-ray films Developing
		Interpret x-ray films	micipici x-iay	tanks Film hangers

EVALUATION: CA: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE CODE: DTH 322	CREDIT UNIT:	2					
CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1					
PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1					
	COURSE CODE: DTH 322 CONTACT HOURS: 2	COURSE CODE: DTH 322 CREDIT UNIT: CONTACT HOURS: 2 THEORETICAL:					

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of anaesthesiology

- 1.0 Know the objectives of anesthesia.
- 2.0 Know the methods of anesthesia.
- 3.0 Know anesthetic agents.
- 4.0 Know the complications associated with the use of anesthetic agents.
- 5.0 Know the special care required for patients before the administration of general anesthesia and post-operative care

COURS	SE: Anaesthesiology	COURSE CODE: DTH	322		CREDIT UNIT:	2
		CONTACT HOURS: 2		r	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR:	1 SEMESTER: 11	PRE-REQUISITE:]	PRACTICAL:	1
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THEORI	ETICAL AND PRACTICA	AL	II.		
GOAL:	This course is designed to provid	e students with knowledge	and skills of a	naesthesiology		
General	Objective 1.0: Know the objecti	ves of anaesthesia				
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL C	CONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learnin	g Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-4	1.1 Define anaesthesiology.	Explain anaesthesiology	Textbooks Journals			
	1.2 State the aim of anaesthesia	Explain the aims of	Diagrams			
		anaesthesia	Whiteboard			
			Computer			
	1.3 Explain the objectives of	Explain the objectives of	Internet			
	anaesthesia	anaesthesia	Marker			
	 Loss of pain 	 Loss of pain 	Projector			
	• Touch	• Touch				
	Temperature	 Temperature 				
	• Sensitivity	 Sensitivity 				
	al Objective 2.0: Know the method	ods of anaesthesia				
5-8	2.1 Describe methods of	Explain methods of	Textbooks		Guide students to	o: Syringes
	anaesthesia	anaesthesia	Journals	Identify local	Identify local	Needles
	 Local anaesthesia 	 Local anaesthesia 	Diagrams	anaesthesia	anaesthesia	Spray
	 General anaesthesia 		Whiteboard	instruments.	instruments.	anaesthetic
		anaesthesia	Computer			models
			Internet			

	2.2 Differentiate between local	Explain the differences	Marker			
	and general anaesthesia	between local and	Projector			
		general anaesthesia.				
	2.3 List instruments used in	Explain instruments used				
	local anaesthesia e.g.:	in local anaesthesia e.g.:				
	 Dental syringes 	 Dental syringes 				
	Hypodermic syringe	 Hypodermic 				
	• Needles	syringe				
		• Needles				
	2.4 Describe types of	Explain types of				
	administration of local	administration of local				
	anaesthesia:	anaesthesia:				
	 Topical 	 Topical 				
	 Infiltration 	 Infiltration 				
	Nerve block	Nerve block				
	2.5 Explain the instruments	Explain the instruments				
	used in general	used in general				
	anaesthesia:	anaesthesia:				
	Boyles machine	 Boyles machine 				
	• EMO machine etc.	 EMO machine 				
		etc.				
	Objective 3.0: Know anaesthetic	agents	<u>, </u>	T		
9-11	3.1 Define an anaesthetic agent	•	Textbooks		Guide students in	
		agent and its role in		1	Identify local and	anaesthetic
	3.2 Explain the role of	dental procedures	_	Γ	r	Samples
	anaesthetic agent in dental			_	anaesthetic agents	
	procedures		Whiteboard	settings	in clinical settings	

agents a applicat 3.3 Explain	nd their ions general anaesthetic I nd their effects	Explain local anaesthetic agents and their applications Explain general anaesthetic agents and their effects				General anaesthetic references
	*	Explain the composition of local anaesthesia				
		cations associated with the	use of anaesthe	etic agents		
13-14 4.1 Explain local an Fain Shoe Brol 4.2 Explain general a Syne Cya Hyp 4.3 Explain reaction	complications of laesthesia e.g.: lating ck seen needles complications of maesthesia: cope nosis otension.	Explain complications of local anaesthesia e.g.: • Fainting • Shock • Broken needles	Textbooks Medical Journals Computer Marker Whiteboard	Role play to recognize allergic reactions Apply emergency protocols	recognize allergic reactions	Simulation setup Allergy response materials

General	Objective 5.0: Know the special	care required for patients	before the adm	ninistration of general ar	naesthesia and pos	t-operative
are	1	1	T		1	1
5	5.1 State the necessary	Explain necessary	Textbooks		Guide students to:	Counselling
	precautions before	precautions before	Patient care	Demonstrate pre-	Demonstrate pre-	models
	administering general	anaesthesia	guidelines	anaesthesia	anaesthesia	
	anaesthesia	administration	Counselling	counselling	counselling	Post-
			resources	techniques	techniques	operative
	5.2 Explain common patient	Explain common patient	Whiteboard		_	care
	fears related to anaesthesia	fears related to	Projector	Apply post-operative	Apply post-	checklist
		anaesthesia		care measures for	operative care	
				simulated patients	measures for	
	5.3 Describe counselling	Explain counselling			simulated patients	
	methods for patients before	methods for patients				
	undergoing anaesthesia	before undergoing				
		anaesthesia				
	5.4 State post-operative care	Explain post-operative				
	steps for patients under	care for patients under				
	anaesthesia	anaesthesia				

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Dental Instrumentation II	COURSE CODE: DTH 323	CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1						
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 215	PRACTICAL: 1						

GOAL: This course is designed to equip the students with knowledge and skills of uses of advance dental instruments and equipment

- 1.0 Know the use of scalers and the principles of sharpening the instruments
- 2.0 Know the use of ultrasonic scalers
- 3.0 Know the instruments used for extraction of deciduous dentition
- 4.0 Know the instruments required for temporary filling
- 5.0 Know the instruments required for permanent filling

COURS	E: Dental Instrumentation II	COURSE CODE: DTH 33	23	CREDIT	UNIT: 2	
		CONTACT HOURS: 2		THEORI	ETICAL: 1	
YEAR	: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH	215	PRACTI	CAL: 1	
COURS	E SPECIFICATION: THEORE	ΓΙCAL AND PRACTICAL				
	This course is d designed to equip				ntal instruments and	l equipmen
General	Objective 1.0: Know the use of so	calers and the principles of s	harpening th	e instruments		
TH	IEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CON	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning		Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define ultrasonic scaler	1	Whiteboard			Ultrasonic
			Marker	Identify the	Identify the	scalers
	1.2 Explain types of Automated		Projector	ultrasonic scaler	ultrasonic scaler	
	scalers	Automated scalers	Computer			Ultrasonio
			Internet	Identify the	Identify the	accessorie
	1.3 Explain the accessories used	Explain the accessories	Journals	accessories used	accessories used	
	with the ultrasonic scalars		Textbooks	with the ultrasonic	with the ultrasonic	
	e.g.: interchangeable tips	scalars e.g.: interchangeable tips		scalars	scalars	
				Demonstrate how	Demonstrate how	
	1.4 Explain how to operate	Explain how to operate		to operate the	to operate the	
	ultrasonic scaler and its accessories	ultrasonic scaler and its accessories		ultrasonic scalers	ultrasonic scalars	
				Demonstrate how	Demonstrate how	
	1.5 Explain procedure for	Explain procedure for		to maintain the	to maintain the	
	maintenance of ultrasonic scaler	maintenance of ultrasonic scaler		ultrasonic scalers	ultrasonic scalars	

	1.6 List the advantages and	Explain the advantages				
	disadvantages of ultrasonic	and disadvantages of				
	scaler	ultrasonic scaler				
General	Objective 3.0: Know the instrume	ents used for extraction of d	eciduous den	tition		
7-9	3.1 Explain instruments for	Explain the instruments	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Extraction of
	extraction of deciduous	for extraction of	Marker	Identify the	Identify the	deciduous
	dentition e.g forceps	deciduous dentition	Projector	instruments for	instruments for	dentition
	3.2 Explain the types of forceps	Explain the types of	Computer	extraction of	extraction of	
	2.2 Emplain the types of forceps	forceps	Textbooks	deciduous dentition	deciduous	
		Explain the differences	Internet		dentition	
	3.3 Differentiate between the	between the types of	Journals	, ,,	Identify the types	
	types of extraction forceps:	extraction forceps: • Lower anterior		of extraction	of extraction	
	Lower anterior	Lower anteriorLower posterior		forceps	forceps	
	Lower posterior	Upper anterior		•	Identify the	
	Upper anteriorUpper posterior forceps	Upper posterior		different types of	different types of	
	• Opper posterior forceps	forceps		elevators	elevators	
	3.4 Explain types of elevators	Explain types of elevators		Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
				use of dental	use of dental	
	3.5 Differentiate between the	Explain the differences		syringe	syringe	
	types of elevators	between the types of elevators				
		Cicvators		Demonstrate	Demonstrate	
	3.6 Describe dental syringe and	Explain dental syringe		sterilization	sterilization	
	its parts	and the parts				
	1			Carryout storage of	•	
	3.7 Describe sterilization and	Explain sterilization and		1	of extraction	
	storage of extraction forceps	storage of extraction			forceps elevators	
	elevators and the dental	forceps elevators and the		dental syringe	and the dental	
	syringe	dental syringe			syringe	
					<u> </u>	L

General	Objective 4.0: Know the instrume	ents required for temporary	filling			
10-12	4.1 Explain the instruments	Explain the instruments	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Excavators
	required for temporary filling	required for temporary	Marker	Identify the	Identify the	
		filing	Projector	instruments	instruments	Spatulas
			Computer	required for	required for	Class slan
	4.2 Differentiate between the	Explain the differences	Textbooks	temporary filling	temporary filing	Glass slap
	types of filling instruments	between the types of	Journals			Tweezers etc.
	e.g.:	filling instruments e.g.:	Internet	Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
	• Excavators	 Excavators 		procedure for	procedure for	
	• Spatulas	 Spatulas 		washing, sterilizing	washing,	
	Glass slap	 Glass slap 		and storing of	sterilizing and	
	Tweezers etc.	Tweezers etc.		temporary filing	storing of	
				instruments	temporary filing	
	4.3 Describe sterilization and	Explain sterilization and			instruments	
	storage of temporary filling	storage of temporary				
	instruments	filling instruments				
General	Objective 5.0: Know the instrume	ents required for permanent	filling	1	1	
	5.1 List permanent filling	Explain permanent filling	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Amalgam
13-15	instruments	instruments	Marker	Identify the	Identify the	condenser
			Projector	instruments	instruments	
	5.2 Describe instruments	Explain instruments	Computer	required for	required for	Ball burnisher
	required for permanent	required for permanent	Textbooks	permanent filling	permanent filling	
	filling e.g. contra-	filling e.g. contra-angle	Journals			Carver
	angle hand piece	hand piece	Internet	Carry out simple	Carry out simple	
				maintenance of the	maintenance of the	Examination
	5.3 Explain simple	Explain simple		instruments	instruments	Set
	maintenance of the	maintenance of the				
	instruments in 5.1	instruments in 5.1 above				
	above					

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Oral Pathology	COURSE CODE: DTH 324	CREDIT UNIT:	3				
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	2				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge of diseases of the oral cavity

- 1.0 Understand developmental disturbances of the jaws, the teeth, and oral soft tissues.
- 2.0 Know oral diseases due to physical agents.
- 3.0 Know oral diseases due to biological agents.
- 4.0 Know oral diseases due to neoplastic changes.
- 5.0 Know oral diseases of unknown origin.
- 6.0 Understand oral manifestations of systemic diseases.
- 7.0 Understand periodontal diseases.

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Oral Pathology	COURSE CODE: DTH 324	CREDIT UNIT: 3						
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 2						
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1						
COLIDGE ODE CITICAL TICAL THE COLUMN	A AND DD A COTTO AT							

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge of diseases of the oral cavity.

General Objective 1.0: Understand developmental disturbances of the jaws, the teeth, and oral soft tissues

THEORETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
-4	1.1 Define developmental disturbances in the oral cavity 1.2 List developmental disturbances affecting the jaws, teeth, and soft tissues	Explain developmental disturbances in the oral cavity Explain developmental disturbances affecting the jaws, teeth, and soft tissue	Textbooks Journals Visual Aids Models Whiteboard Marker Internet	Gutcome	Teuvites	
	 1.3 Explain developmental disturbances under the following: Congenital Hereditary Acquired 	Explain developmental disturbances under the following: • Congenital • Hereditary • Acquired	Computer Project Charts			

Gene 5-6	ral Objective 2.0: Know oral disea 2.1 Explain oral diseases caused		Textbooks		Guide students	Clinical models
J - U	by physical agents:	diseases due to physical	Whiteboard		to:	Simulation tools
	Fractures	1		Identify:	Identify:	
		agents:		_	1	
	• Burns	• Fractures	Projector	• Attrition	• attrition	
	Wounds	• Burns	Computer Journals	• Abrasion	• abrasion	
		• Wounds		• Erosion in	• Erosion	
			Case studies	Cililicai	in	
	2.2 Describe effects of attrition,	<u> </u>	Internet	models.	clinical	
	abrasion, and erosion on oral		Charts		models.	
	tissues	erosion on oral tissues				
	2.3 Explain agents responsible	Explain agents for these				
	for conditions like:	conditions like:				
	• Attrition	• Attrition				
	 Abrasion 	 Abrasion 				
	• Erosion	• Erosion				
ener	al Objective 3.0: Know oral diseas	es due to biological agents (i	nfections).			
-9	3.1 Define oral infections caused	Explain oral infections	Textbooks		Guide students	Lab models
	by biological agents	caused by biological agents	Whiteboard		to:	
			Marker	Identify symptoms	Identify	Microscopes
	3.2 Explain types of infections	Explain types of infections	Projector	of viral, bacterial,	symptoms of	
	caused by:	caused by:	Computer	and fungal	viral, bacterial,	Diagnostic
	 Viruses 	 Viruses 	Journals	infections in oral	and fungal	guides
	Bacteria	Bacteria	Case studies	cavity	infections in oral	
	• Fungi	• Fungi	Internet Charts		cavity	
	3.3 Describe common oral	Explain common oral				
	infections for each in 3.2	infections for each in 3.2				
	above	above				

Gener	al Objective 4.0: Know oral diseas	ses due to neoplastic changes				
10-11	4.1 Define oral neoplasms	Explain oral neoplasms	Medical		Guide students	Histology slides
			case studies		to:	
	4.2 Describe types of oral	Explain types of oral	Textbooks	Identify benign and	Identify benign	Visual aids
	neoplasms	neoplasms	Whiteboard	malignant	and malignant	
			Marker	neoplasms using lab	neoplasms using	Lab models
	4.3 List common benign and	Explain common benign	Projector	models and	lab models and	
	malignant neoplasms e.g.:	and malignant neoplasms	Computer	histology slides.	histology slides.	
	• Benign	e.g.:	Journals	•		
	Epithelioma	 Benign 	Case studies			
	• Fibroma	 Epithelioma 	Internet			
	Malignant —	 Fibroma 	Charts			
	• Squamous cell	• Malignant –	Visual Aids			
	Carcinoma	 Squamous cell 				
		Carcinoma				
	4.4 Explain characteristic	Explain characteristic				
	features of neoplasm:	features of neoplasm:				
	 Benign neoplasm 	 Benign neoplasm 				
	 Malignant neoplasm 	 Malignant 				
		neoplasm				
	al Objective 5.0: Know oral diseas			T	1	T
12	5.1 Define oral diseases of	Explain oral diseases of	Textbooks		Guide students	Diagnostic tools
	unknown origin	unknown origin	Whiteboard		to:	
			Marker	Identify clinical	3	Visual aids
	5.2 Explain common oral	Explain common oral	Projector	signs of oral	signs of oral	
	diseases of unknown causes	diseases of unknown causes	Computer	diseases of unknown		
	(e.g., aphthous ulcers)	(e.g., aphthous ulcers)	Journals	origin in patients.	unknown origin	
			Case studies		in patients.	
			Internet			
			Charts			

	5.4 Explain clinical signs	Explain clinical signs				
	associated with these	associated with these				
	conditions	conditions				
Genera	l Objective 6.0: Understand oral r	nanifestations of systemic dis	seases.			
13-14	6.1 Explain oral manifestations	Explain oral manifestations	Atlas		Guide students	Case studies
	of systemic diseases e.g.:	of systemic diseases e.g.:	Textbooks		to:	
	 Blood disorders 	 Blood disorders 	Whiteboard	Identify symptoms	Identify	Medical records
	Hormonal imbalances	Hormonal imbalances	Marker Projector	of systemic diseases in oral examinations	* *	
	6.2 Explain systemic diseases with oral manifestations e.g.:	Explain systemic diseases with oral manifestations	Computer Journals Case studies		diseases in oral examinations.	
l	AnaemiaLeukaemia	e.g.: • Anaemia • Leukaemia	Internet Charts	Perform case analyses of patients with systemic	Perform case analyses of patients with	
	6.3 Describe oral signs of nutritional deficiencies and other systemic diseases	Explain oral signs of nutritional deficiencies and other systemic diseases		diseases	systemic diseases	
Genera	l Objective 7.0: Understand perio	dontal diseases.			1	1
15	7.1 Define periodontal diseases.	Explain periodontal diseases	Textbooks Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Dental models
	7.2 Describe types of	Explain types of periodontal	Marker	Identify clinical	Identify clinical	
	periodontal diseases into	diseases into gingivitis and	Internet	signs of gingivitis	signs of	Visual aids
	gingivitis and periodontitis	periodontitis	Computer Projector	and periodontitis.	gingivitis and periodontitis.	
	7.3 Describe the etiology of the		Journals			
	7.2 above	7.2 above.	Visual Aids Atlas			

7.4 Describe the clinical	Explain the clinical		
presentation and progression	presentation of these		
of periodontal diseases	diseases		
7.5 State the relationship	Explain the relationship		
between gingivitis and	between gingivitis and		
periodontitis	periodontitis		
7.6 Define peri-implant	Explain peri-implant		
7.7 Explain indications for peri-	Explain indications for peri-		
implant	implant		

EVALUATION: CA: 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Oral Diagnosis and Treatment Planning	COURSE CODE: DTH 325	CREDIT UNIT:	2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1				
COAL. This course is designed to provide the students with the browledge and skills in discussioned treatment alaming							

GOAL: This course is designed to provide the students with the knowledge and skills in diagnosis and treatment planning

- 1.0 Know how to take the medical/dental history
- 2.0 Know examination of oral cavity
- 3.0 Know diagnoses of diseases
- 4.0 Know treatment plan design

COURS	SE: Oral Diagnosis and Treatmo	ent Planning	COURSI	E CODE: DT	H 325	CREDIT UNIT:	2
			CONTA	CT HOURS:	2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR:	I SEMESTER: II		PRE-RE	QUISITE:		PRACTICAL:	1
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THEC	RETICAL AND	PRACTIO	CAL			
GOAL:	This course is designed to pro-	vide the students	with the k	nowledge and	skills in diagnosis a	nd treatment planning	
General	Objective 1.0: Know how to	take the medical/	dental hist	tory			
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT				PRACTICAL CO	ONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities		Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	
1-4	 1.1 Explain how to take history including: Presenting complaint History of present complaint Medical history Dental history etc. 	Explain how to ta history including Presenting complains History of complains Medical Research Family his	est of present the story story	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector Journals History forms Charts	Take a patient history, covering dental and medical details	Guide students to: Take a patient history, covering dental and medical details	Medical form
	documenting medical history	Explain the impodocumenting mechistory Explain the poter of not taking a comedical history	dical ntial risks omplete				

treatment

treatment

Genera	al Objective 2.0: Know examin	ation of the oral cavity				
5-8	 2.1 Explain areas of focus during an oral examination: Extraoral Tissues Intraoral Tissues 	Explain areas of focus during an oral examination: • Extraoral Tissues • Intraoral Tissues	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector	examination using	tools and techniques.	Examination instruments Dental mirrors Dental
	2.2 Describe instruments required for an oral examination2.3 Describe the procedure for examining the mouth	Explain instruments equired for an oral xamination Explain the procedure for examining the mouth	Journals Charts	Record detailed	Record detailed findings from the examination. Interpret findings	Probe Patient record /forms Dental Model
Genera	al Objective 3.0: Know diagnos	ees of diseases		based on examination results	based on examination results	Bentai Woder
9-11	 3.1 Define diagnosis 3.2 State the stages of diagnosis: Provisional diagnosis investigations Final diagnosis 	Explain diagnosis Explain the stages of diagnosis: • Provisional diagnosis • investigations • Final diagnosis	Textbooks Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector Journals Charts	Perform diagnostic assessments,	Guide student to: Perform diagnostic assessments, Interpret results from diagnostic tools and tests.	Radiography tools Pulp testers Laboratory reagents
	3.3 Describe the process of making a provisional diagnosis3.4 List investigations:	Explain the process of making a provisional diagnosis Explain investigations: • Radiography			Formulate a provisional and final diagnosis.	

	RadiographyPulp testingLaboratory test	Pulp testingLaboratory test				
Genera	Objective 4.0: Know treatment	nt plan design				
12-15	4.1 Define treatment planning	Explain treatment	Textbooks	Develop a	Guide student to:	Treatment
		planning	Whiteboard	treatment plan	Develop a treatment	plan
	ireaunem pianning	Explain the steps in treatment planning	Marker Internet Computer	based on diagnostic findings	plan based on diagnostic findings	templates
	1 4 4 4 1 1	Explain decision-making in treatment planning	Projector Journals Software	Justify treatment decisions based on diagnostic findings	1	Case records
	impact treatment	Explain factors that impact treatment decisions: • Medical/dental history • Available resources, etc.	Charts		diagnostic findings	

EVALUATION: CA 40%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Introduction to Dental Gerontology	COURSE CODE: DTH 326	CREDIT UNIT: 2					
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1					
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1					

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills to diagnose and manage dental issues in older adults

- 1.0 Know Age-Related Dental Changes
- 2.0 Know Patient Management Techniques for Elderly Patient
- 3.0 Know the diagnosis and management of dental Issues in Geriatric Patients
- 4.0 Understand Geriatric Dental Practices

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
Dental Gerontology COURSE CODE: DTH 326 CREDIT UNIT: 2	COURSE: Introduction to Dental Gerontology							
CONTACT HOURS: 2 THEORETICAL: 1								
R: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1	YEAR: I SEMESTER: II							
R: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL: 1								

COURSE SPECIFICATION: Theoretical And Practical

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills to diagnose and manage dental issues in older adults

General Objective 1.0: Know Age-Related Dental Changes

THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT			
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-4	1.1 Define Geriatric	Explain Geriatric	Textbook		Guide students to:	Diagnostic
	Dentistry	Dentistry	Journals			tools
			Computer	Identify age-related	Identify age-related	
	1.2 Explain the importance	Explain the	Internet	dental conditions	dental conditions	Anatomical
	of Geriatric Dentistry	importance of	Whiteboard	through sample	through sample	charts
		Geriatric Dentistry	Marker	cases	cases	
			Projector			
	1.3 Explain common oral	Explain common oral	Journals	Examine case	Examine case	
	health issues in the	health issues in the	Charts	studies to relate	studies to relate	
	elderly e.g.:	elderly e.g.:	Pictorials	systemic conditions	systemic conditions	
	 Xerostomia 	 Xerostomia 	Research	to dental issues	to dental issues	
	 Root caries 	 Root caries 	articles			
	Periodontal disease	 Periodontal 				
	etc.	disease etc.				
	1.4 Describe the impact of	Explain the impact of				
	systemic health	systemic health				

conditions on oral health 1.5 Explain age-related anatomical and physiological changes affecting geriatric General Objective 2.0: Know Patie	conditions on oral health Explain age-related anatomical and physiological changes affecting geriatric ent Management Technic	ques for Elderl	y Patient		
	Explain techniques for effective communication with older adults Explain special chairside management considerations Explain the role of caregivers in geriatric dentistry Explain the importance of interdisciplinary collaboration in managing geriatric patients	Textbook Journals Computer Internet Whiteboard Marker Projector Journals Charts Pictorials Clinical guidelines Interdiscipl inary practice guidelines	Role-play scenarios focusing on communication and treatment adaptation Develop a care plan involving caregivers and interdisciplinary t eams	Guide students to: Role-play scenarios focusing on communication and treatment adaptation Develop a care plan involving caregivers and interdisciplinary teams	Scripts Feedback forms Care plan templates

Genera	al Objective 3.0: Know the	udiagnosis and manageme	ent of dental Is	sues in Geriatric Patier	nts	<u> </u>
9-11	 3.1 Explain common dental treatments for geriatric patients e.g.: Restorations Extractions periodontal treatment 3.2 Explain pain management strategies in geriatric dentistry 	Explain common dental treatments for geriatric patients e.g.:	Textbooks Journals Computer Internet Whiteboard Marker Projector Journals Charts Pictorials	Evaluate treatment plans for geriatric patients based on individual needs Develop preventive care strategies for geriatric patients	Guide student to: Evaluate treatment plans for geriatric patients based on individual needs Develop preventive care strategies for geriatric patients	Assessment forms Preventive care templates Vital signs apparatus Clinical Thermometer
	3.3 Explain the implications of pharmacological considerations in treating elderly patients	Explain the implications of pharmacological considerations in treating elderly patients				Sphynomano meter Periodontal Probe Stethoscope
	3.4 Explain the importance of preventive care in geriatric dentistry	Explain the importance of preventive care in geriatric dentistry				Weighing scale
Genera	al Objective 4.0: Understand	·	ees	<u> </u>		
12-14	4.1 Explain the role of technology in	Explain the role of technology in	Textbooks Journals Computer		Guide students to:	Case studies

enhancing geriatric	enhancing geriatric	Internet			
dental care:	dental care.	Whiteboard	Visit to Older adult's	Visit to Older	Technology
 Tele-dentistry 	 Tele-dentistry 	Marker	home	adult's home	Evaluation
Phone calls etc.	• Phone calls etc.	Projector Journals	Design an evaluation	Design an	forms
4.2 Explain future trends in geriatric dentistry	Explain future trends in geriatric dentistry	Charts Pictorials Analysis	plan for a geriatric dental program.	evaluation plan for a geriatric dental program	Evaluation templates
4.3 Explain the effectiveness of geriatric dental programs and policies	Explain the effectiveness of geriatric dental programs and policies	reports Ethical guidelines			Video clips
4.4 Explain ethical considerations in geriatric dentistry	Explain ethical considerations in geriatric dentistry.				

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Care Of Patient With Special Needs	COURSE CODE: DTH 327	CREDIT UNIT:	2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1				

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge and skills required for providing dental care to patients with special needs

- 1.0 Know dental needs of patients with special needs
- 2.0 Know how to provide care modifications
- 3.0 Know communication techniques
- 4.0 Know development of a customized dental care plan

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Care of Patient with Special Needs	COURSE CODE: DTH 327	CREDIT UNIT:	2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1				
YEAR: I SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1				
COLIDGE CDE CLEIC A PLON. PLUE OD PRICA	A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A						

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with the knowledge and skills required for providing dental care to patients with special needs.

General Objective 1.0: Know dental needs of patients with special needs

THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONT	TENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-4	 1.1 Define special needs 1.2 Explain types of special needs conditions in dental care: Physical Developmental Cognitive disabilities 	Explain special needs Explain types of special needs conditions in dental care: • Physical • Developmental • Cognitive disabilities	Textbooks Journals Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Patient case Medical history forms Charts			
	1.3 Explain common medical conditions associated with special needs patients that could affect dental treatment	Explain common medical conditions associated with special needs patients that could affect dental treatment				

	1.4 Explain medications associated with special needs patients that could affect dental treatment1.5 Describe of process the of gathering a detailed	Explain medications associated with special needs patients that could affect dental treatment Explain of process the of gathering a detailed				
	medical history on patient specific	medical history on patient specific requirement				
	requirement					
	Objective 2.0: Know how to pr					.
5-8	_ * *	Explain techniques for	Textbooks			Dental chair
	handling patients with	handling patients with	Journals			with stabilizing
	physical impairment	physical impairment	Adaptive	Practice positioning		equipment
	during dental	during dental procedures	dental	and stabilizing	positioning and	Adaptive tools
	procedures		equipment	techniques with	Stabilizing	- 15apa 10 tools
			Catalogues	special needs patient	techniques with	
	2.2 Describe pain	Explain pain management	Whiteboard	models	special needs	
	management for	for patients with cognitive	Marker		patient models	
	patients with cognitive	or developmental	Computer			
	or developmental	disabilities	Internet	Use adaptive	Use adaptive	
	disabilities		Patient case	equipment to	equipment to	
			Charts	conduct basic dental	conduct basic	
	2.3 Describe equipment	Explain equipment and		procedures on	dental	
	and facilities	facilities modifications		simulated patients	procedures on	
	modifications needed	needed for accessible			simulated	
	for accessible dental	dental care			patients	
	care					

General	Objective 3.0: Know comm	nunication techniques				
9-11	3.1 Describe communication	Explain communication strategies for patients with	Textbooks Journals	Use communication aids to interact with a	Guide students to:	Communication aids
	strategies for patients with special needs: • Hearing • Vision • Speech impairments 3.2 List communication aids required for patients with special	special needs: • Hearing • Vision • Speech impairments Explain communication aids required for patients with special needs	Whiteboard Marker Computer Internet Charts	simulated patient with sensory impairments Engage in role-play with caregivers and practice building rapport.	Use communication aids to interact with a simulated patient with sensory impairments Engage in role-	Sensory impairment Simulation tools
	needs 3.3 Explain communication methods used to engage caregivers	Explain communication methods used to engage caregivers		Demonstrate cultural sensitivity during interactions.	play with caregivers and practice building rapport. Demonstrate cultural	
	3.4 Explain cultural sensitivity when working with diverse patients with special needs	Discuss cultural sensitivity when working with diverse patients with special needs			sensitivity during interactions	
	Objective 4.0: Know how to	*		1		
12-14	4.1 Outline steps for creating a patient centred dental care plan	Explain steps for creating a patient centred dental care		Develop a dental	Guide student to: Develop a	Sample care plans
	centred dental care plan	pian	Marker	care plan for a	dental care plan	

4.2 Explain follow-up and	Explain follow-up and	Computer	simulated special	for a simulated	
monitoring strategies	monitoring strategies for	Internet	needs patients	special needs	Emergency kits
for patients with	patients with chronic	Charts		patients	
chronic conditions	conditions		Demonstrate		
			handling of	Demonstrate	
4.3 Explain strategies for	Explain strategies for		emergency	handling of	
handling emergency	handling emergency		scenarios with	emergency	
situations specific to	situations specific to		special needs	scenarios with	
special needs patients	special needs patients		considerations	special needs	
				considerations	

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
Course: Research Methodology in Dental Therapy	COURSE CODE: DTH 328	CREDIT UNIT:	2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	2						
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	0						

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge of research skills to present research outcomes logically.

- 1.0 Understand the concept of research
- 2.0 Know the design and planning of the research
- 3.0 Understand sampling techniques
- 4.0 Know the use of statistics in research
- 5.0 Understand the conduct and presentation of research results
- 6.0 Know the layout of a research report

PROG	RAMME: National Diploma	in Dental Therapy					
	SE: Research Methodology in		JRSE CODE: DTH	328	CREDI	IT UNIT:	2
		CON	NTACT HOURS: 2		THEO	RETICAL:	2
YEAR	: II SEMESTER: I	PRE	-REQUISITE:		PRACT	ΓICAL:	0
COUR	SE SPECIFIFCATION: THI	EORETICAL AND PRA	CTICAL				
GOAL	: This course is designed to equ	uip students with knowle	dge of research skills	to present	researc	h outcomes lo	gically.
Genera	al Objective 1.0 Understand the	e concept of research					
THE	DRETICAL CONTENT			PRACT	ICAL C	CONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific		Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Learning		Activities	
				Outcome	;		
1-3	1.1 Define Research	Explain Research	Textbooks				
			Whiteboard				
	1.2 Explain the types of	Explain the types of	Marker				
	research:	research:	Multimedia				
	 Historical 	Historical	Projector				
	 Descriptive 	 Descriptive 	Computer				
	 Analytical 	 Analytical 	Laptops				
	• Experimental etc.	• Experimental etc.	Internet				
			Lecture notes				
	1.3 Explain the aims of research	Explain the aims of rese	earch Charts				
	1.4 Define research	Explain research					
	methodology	methodology					
	1.5 Explain the methods of	Explain the methods of					
	conducting research:	conducting research:					
	Experimental	Experimental					

1.6 Explain how to identify a field of research	Explain how to identify a field of research		
1.7 Explain how to formulate a research title	Explain how to formulate a research title		
relevant Information in the research field: • Museums • Markets • Hospitals • libraries • Internet, etc. 1.9 Explain index card system for research title 1.10 Explain how to review related literature on the	Explain the sources of relevant Information in the research field: • Museums • Markets • Hospitals • libraries • Internet, etc. Explain index card system for research title Explain how to review related literature on the subject matter of research		
General Objective 2.0: Know the desi	gn and planning of research		
4-6 2.1 Explain research design	Explain research design	Journals Whiteboard	
 2.2 Explain methods applied in research design e.g. Intervention Non-intervention studies, 	Explain methods applied in research design e.g. • Intervention • Non-intervention	Marker Multimedia Projector Computer	
Non-intervention studies,Questionnaire,	studies,	Internet	

	• Interview,	Questionnaire,	Lecture notes		
	Home visits	• Interview,	Charts		
	Observation etc.	Home visits			
		Observation etc.			
	2.3 Explain the merits and	Explain the merits and			
	demerits of various	demerits of various research			
	research designs	designs			
	2.4 Explain the methods most	Explain the methods most			
	appropriate for each	appropriate for each			
	research (project) type	research (project) type			
Genera	al Objective 3.0: Understand san	mpling techniques			
7-8	3.1 Define sampling	Explain sampling	Journals Whiteboard		
	3.2 Explain types of sampling	Explain types of sampling	Marker		
	techniques:		Multimedia		
	Probability	 Probability 	Projector		
	Non-probability	Non-probability	Computer		
			Internet		
	3.3 Describe the merits and	Explain the merits and	Lecture notes		
	demerits of each sampling	demerits of each sampling	Charts		
	technique in 3.2	technique in 3.2			
	3.4 Describe how to calculate	Explain how to calculate the			
	the sample size	sample size			
Genera	al Objective 4.0: Know the use	of statistics in research			
9-10	4.1 Define basic statistics.	Explain basic statistics	Journals		
			Whiteboard		
	4.2 Explain basic statistical	Explain basic statistical	Marker		
	tests	tests			

	4.3 Explain the characteristics	Explain the characteristics	Multimedia
	of each of the tests in 4.2	of each of the tests in 4.2	Projector
			Computer
	4.4 Explain the suitability of	Explain the suitability of	Internet
	each of the tests in 4.2	each of the tests in 4.2	Lecture notes
			Charts
Genera	d Objective 5.0: Understand the	e conduct and presentation of	research results
11-12	5.1 Explain how to carry out	Explain how to carry out	Journals
	the research using any	the research experiment	Whiteboard
	research design	using any research design	Marker
			Multimedia
	5.2 Explain how to collect data	Explain how to collect data	Projector
	for the research in 5.1	for the experiment in 5.1	Computer
			Internet
	5.3 Explain how to analyze the	Explain how to analyze the	Lecture notes
	data using appropriate	data using appropriate	Charts
	methods	methods	
	5.4 Explain how to interpret	Explain how to interpret the	
	the results obtained from	results obtained from the	
	the research	research	
	5.5 Explain how to write up	Explain how to write up the	
	the report of the research	report of the research	
	conducted	conducted	
Genera	l Objective 6.0: Know the lay	out of a research report	
13-14	6.1 Define research report	Explain the research report	Journals.
	layout	layout	Whiteboard
			Marker

6.2 List research report layout	Explain research report	Multimedia		
	layout	Projector		
6.3 Explain each research		Computer		
report layout	Explain each research	Internet		
	report layout	Lecture notes		
		Charts		

YEAR II SEMESTER I

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIP	LOMA DENTAL THERAPY		
COURSE: Contemporary Dentistry	COURSE CODE: DTH 411	CREDIT UNIT:	3
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	2

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of digital dentistry.

- 1.0 Understand the Basics of Digital Dentistry
- 2.0 Know Digital Tools in Dental Therapy
- 3.0 Understand Teledentistry and Remote Dental Monitoring (RDM)
- 4.0 Know Robotics in Dental Procedures
- 5.0 Understand Wearable Dental Devices and Patient Health Monitoring
- 6.0 Know Artificial Intelligence (AI) in Dental Diagnosis and Treatment Planning
- 7.0 Understand Laser Therapy in Dental Treatment

PROGI	RAMME: HIGHER NATION	ONAL DIPLOMA DEN	TAL THERA	PY		
COURS	SE: Contemporary Dentistry	COURSE CO	DE: DTH 411	CRI	EDIT UNIT: 3	
		CONTACT H	IOURS: 3	TH	EORETICAL: 1	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUIS	SITE:	PRA	ACTICAL: 2	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: TH	EORETICAL AND PRA	CTICAL			
GOAL:	This course is designed to p	provide students with the	knowledge and	d skills of digital den	tistry.	
	l Objective 1.0: Understand			-		
	RETICAL CONTENT	The Busies of Bigital Bell	iciser y	PRACTICAL CO	ONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning Outcome	Teacher's Activities	Resources
1-2	1.1 Define digital dentistry1.2 List components of digital dentistry1.3 Explain the basics of CAD/CAM technology.	Explain digital dentistry Explain components of digital dentistry Explain CAD/CAM systems and their applications.	Journal Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector Charts	Observe demonstrations of CAD/CAM system in operation	Guide students to: Observe demonstrations of CAD/CAM systems in operation.	CAD/CAM system Projector 3D models
	Objective 2.0: Know Digit		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Cuido students to	Andio viguala
3-5	2.1 List digital tools used in dentistry:	Explain digital tools used in dentistry:	Textbooks Whiteboard	Practice digital	Guide students to: Practice digital	Audio visuals Online
	CAD /CAMIntra-Oral Scanner3D Printer	CAD /CAMIntra-OralScanner	Marker Computer Internet	impressions and 3D imaging on models	imaging on models	materials
	AIIntra-Oral CameraDental Laser	 3D Printer AI Intra-Oral	Projector Charts	Visit to a clinic usindigital impression kits and 3D models	New Year of the American Visit to a clinic using digital impression with and 3D models	

	 Digital X-ray etc. 2.2 Explain the role of 3D imaging in diagnosis 2.3 Explain digital 	Camera • Dental Laser • Digital X-ray etc. Explain the role of 3D imaging in diagnosis. Explain digital	Digital impression kits			
	impression-taking	impression-taking				
	techniques	techniques				
General	Objective 3.0: Understand	Teledentistry and Remote	e Dental Moni	toring (RDM)		,
6-7	3.1Define teledentistry	Explain teledentistry	Textbooks Whiteboard	Simulate a	Guide students to: Simulate a	Simulation software
	3.2 Define Remote Dental	Explain Remote Dental	Marker	teledentistry	teledentistry	Telemedicine
	Monitoring (RDM)	Monitoring (RDM)	Computer Internet	consultation session	consultation session	resources
	3.3 Explain applications of teledentistry	Explain applications of teledentistry	Projector Charts Case studies,			
	3.4 Explain the advantages and disadvantages of remote patient monitoring	Explain the advantages and disadvantages of remote patient monitoring	telemedicine resources			
	Objective 4.0: Know Robo					
	4.1 Define Robotics in dentistry4.2 Describe the basics of robotics in dentistry	Explain Robotics in dentistry Explain the basics of robotics in dentistry	Textbooks Journal Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer	Interact with robotics simulations.	Guide students to: Interact with robotics simulations.	Robotic dental simulations Videos

	4.3 State types of robotic systems used in dental practices.	Explain types of robotic systems used in dental practices.	Projector Charts Robotics in dentistry			
			dentisti y			
Genera	al Objective 5.0: Understand					
9-10	5.1 Define Dental wearable devices5.2 Explain the function of wearable devices in dental health5.3 Explain the benefits and limitations of wearable devices	devices Explain the function of wearable devices in dental health Explain the benefits and	Textbooks Journal Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector Charts Articles	Test functionalities of dental wearable devices on models. Visit to a clinic using wearable dental device, instruction	dental wearable devices on models.	Wearable dental devices
Genera	al Objective 6.0: Know Artifi	icial Intelligence (AI) in I	L Dental Diagnos	is and Treatment Plani	ning	
11	6.1 Define artificial intelligence in dental applications6.2 Explain AI-based tools for dental diagnosis	Explain artificial intelligence in dental applications Explain AI-based tools for dental diagnosis and	Textbooks Journal Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer	Use AI software for diagnostic exercises	Guide students to: Use AI software for diagnostic exercises	AI software Diagnostic tools Case studies
	and planning 6.3 Explain the importance of AI in dental practice	planning Explain the importance of AI in dental practice	Projector Charts			

2-13	7.1 Define laser therapy	Explain laser therapy	Textbooks	Observe laser therapy	Guide students to:	Laser therapy
	7.2 Explain the use of lasers in treating dental conditions7.3 Explain conditions treatable with laser therapy7.4 Explain the adverse	Explain the use of lasers in treating dental conditions. Explain conditions	Journal Whiteboard Marker Internet Computer Projector Charts	Visit to a clinic using Laser therapy, safety	dental treatments Visit to a clinic using	equipment

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DI	ENTAL THERAPY		
COURSE: Oral Health Education and Promotion	COURSE CODE: DTH 412	CREDIT UNIT:	2
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1

GOAL: This course is designed to equip student with knowledge and skills on oral health education and promotion.

- 1.0 Understand basic concepts of Oral Health
- 2.0 Understand Oral health behavior and attitudes
- 3.0 Understand the prevention and control of Oral diseases
- 4.0 Understand Oral Health Education
- 5.0 Understand Community Health Programs
- 6.0 Understand the use of technology in Oral Health Promotion

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOM	A DENTAL THERAPY		
COURSE: Oral Health Education and Promotion	COURSE CODE: DTH 412	CREDIT UNIT:	2
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to equip student with knowledge and skills on oral health education and promotion.

General Objective 1.0: Understand basic concepts of Oral Health

THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define oral health	Explain oral health	Whiteboard			
	1.2 Define oral health education	Explain oral health education	Marker Projector Textbooks			
	1.3 Explain the importance of oral health	Explain the importance of oral health	Computer Journals Internet			
	 1.4 Explain common oral diseases: Dental caries Periodontitis Oral cancers etc. 1.5 Explain the epidemiology of oral diseases 	Explain common oral diseases:	Charts			

Gene	ral Objective 2.0: Understand On	ral health behaviour and a	attitude			
2-4	theories e.g.: • Health Belief Model • Social Cognitive Theory etc. 2.2 Explain the factors	theories e.g.:	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Internet Charts			
	influences on oral health practices	Explain cultural influences on oral health practices				
	al Objective 3.0: Understand the	prevention and control of		es		
5-7	 3.1 Explain the strategies for oral disease prevention 3.2 Explain the role of fluoride and dental sealants on Oral disease prevention 3.3 Explain the importance of oral hygiene practices on oral disease prevention: Brushing 	Explain the role of fluoride and dental sealants on Oral disease prevention Explain the importance of oral hygiene	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Internet Charts	Demonstrate the following • Brushing techniques • Flossing	Guide students to: Demonstrate the following Brushing techniques Flossing	Toothbrush Dental model floss
	 Flossing Mouthwash etc. 3.2 Explain the impact of Nutrition on oral health 	practices on oral disease prevention:				

10	4.1 Explain the Principles of	I I	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Public
	health education 4.2 Describe how to design effective educational programs	Explain how to design effective educational	Marker Projector Textbooks Computer	Design an oral health educational program:	Design an oral health educational	address systems Posters
	4.3 Explain adult and child learning principles	Explain adult and child learning principles Explain how to create educational materials: • Brochures • Posters	Journals Internet Charts	 School oral health awareness Market oral health awareness Community oral awareness Water fluoridation 	health	Flyers Banners
				Demonstrate Role play to illustrate oral health education Create educational materials: Brochures Posters Digital content etc.	Demonstrate Role play to illustrate oral health education Create educational materials:	

Genera	al Objective 5.0: Understand Co	mmunity Oral Health pro	grams			
11-13	5.1 Explain community health	Explain community	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Posters
	initiatives with regards to	health initiatives with	Marker			
	Oral health Education	regards to Oral health	Projector	Partner with a	Partner with a	
		Education	Textbooks	school, health	school, health	D 11'
	5.2 Explain partnerships on	Explain partnerships on	Computer	facility or	facility or	Public
	Oral Health Education	Oral Health Education	Journals	community for Oral	community for Oral	address
	with:	with:	Internet	Health Education,	Health Education,	systems
	 Schools 	 Schools 	Charts	Promotion and	Promotion and	
	 Health agencies 	 Health 				
	 Community 	agencies		campaign	campaign	
	 Organizations 	 Community 				Flyers
		 Organizations 				Banners
	5.3 Explain strategies for					Damicis
	outreach and engagement	Explain strategies for				
	for Oral Health Education	outreach and				
	and Promotion	engagement for Oral				
		Health Education and				
		Promotion				
	5.4 Explain how to evaluate					
	community Oral health	Explain how to evaluate				
	education programs	community Oral health				
G		education programs				
	d Objective 6.0: Understand the			Ith Promotion	1	T
14-15	6.1 Explain the use of social	Explain the use of social				
	media and digital	media and digital	Marker			
	platforms for education	platforms for education	Projector			
			Textbooks			
	6.2 Explain the impact of tele-	1 1	Computer			
	dentistry on dental care	tele-dentistry on dental	Journals			
		care	Internet			
	6.2 Evalsia the impossetions in		Charts			
	6.3 Explain the innovations in					
	oral health education tools:					

AppsOnline courses etc.	Explain the innovations in oral health education tools:
	AppsOnline courses etc.

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY								
COURSE: Dental Office Management	COURSE CODE: DTH 413	CREDIT UNIT: 2						
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2						
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0						

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of dental office management.

- 1.0: Know Office Management of Personnel, Material, and Equipment
- 2.0: Know the Appropriate Management Techniques in the Dental Office
- 3:0: Know economic Management of the Dental Office
- 4.0: Understand Store-Keeping Procedures and Requirements

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Dental Office Management	COURSE CODE: DTH 413	CREDIT UNIT: 2							
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 1							
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 1							

COURSE SPECIFICATION: THEORETICAL AND PRACTICAL

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with knowledge and skills of dental office management.

General Objective 1.0: Know Office Management of Personnel, Material, and Equipment

THEOR	THEORETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
5-8	1.1 Define Office	Explain Office	Textbooks			
	management	management	Journals			
			Whiteboard			
	1.2 Outline the principles of	Explain the	Marker			
	Office management	principles of Office	Projector			
		management	Internet			
			Computer			
	1.3 State the factors for	Explain the factors	Manual			
	selecting candidates for	for selecting	Catalogues			
	dental therapist position	candidates for dental				
		therapist position				
	1.4 Describe deployment	Explain deployment				
	and evaluation of staff	and evaluation of				
	within a dental office	staff within a dental				
		office				

	1.5 Define procurement	Explain				
		procurement				
	1.6 Explain the process for					
	procurement	Explain the process				
		for procurement				
General (Objective 2.0: Know the Appr	copriate Management	Techniques in	the Dental Office		
9-11	2.1 State management	Explain management	Textbooks		Guide the student to:	Financial
	techniques	techniques	Journals	Prepare a sample	Prepare a sample	planning
			Whiteboard	budget and estimate	budget and estimate	software
	2.2 Explain the applications	Explain the	Marker	for typical dental	for typical dental	
	of management	applications of	Projector	office operations	office operations	Worksheets
	techniques in dental	management	Internet			
	office	techniques in dental	Computer			
		office	Manual			
			Catalogues			
	2.3Explain roles and	Explain roles and				
	responsibilities of dental	responsibilities of				
	office staff	dental office staff				
	2.4 Explain budget	Explain budget				
	preparation in dental	preparation in dental				
	office	office				
General C	Objective 3.0: Know economi	c management of the	Dental Office			
	3.1 Define economic	Explain economic	Textbooks			
	management	management	Journals			
			Whiteboard			
	3.2 Explain the importance	Explain the	Markers			
	of economic	importance of	Computer			
	management in a dental	economic	Internet			
	office		Projector			

	 3.3 Explain factors in economic management: Income Tracking Expenditure Analysis Budgeting 	dental office Explain factors in economic management: • Income Tracking • Expenditure	Diagrams Guidelines			
	3.4 Explain the impact of economic factors on office management	Analysis • Budgeting Explain the impact of economic factors on office management				
General O	bjective 4.0: Understand Sto	re-Keeping Procedure	es and Requirer	nents		
12-15	4.1 Define Storekeeping	Storekeeping	Textbooks Journals Whiteboard	Carryout the following:	Guide the student to: Carryout the following:	Store management software
	 4.2 Describe the requirements for dental store management 4.3 Explain store-keeping processes 4.4 Explain dental forms for 	Explain the requirements for dental store management. Explain store-keeping processes	Markers Computer Internet Projector Diagrams Guidelines Manuals	 Stock-taking Inventory Control Issuing Supply Shelf-life monitoring Storage 	 Stock-taking Inventory Control Issuing Supply Shelf-life monitoring Storage 	Supply checklists Inventory software Issue forms Stock forms Inventory tools Expiration
	store management and stock-taking	for store				logs

	management and		Storage
4.5 Describe the process of	stock-taking		containers
monitoring dental			
materials' shelf-life and	Explain the process		
their storage	of monitoring dental		
	materials' shelf-life		
	and their storage		

PROGRA	PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY									
COURSE: Periodontology			COURSE CODE: D	COURSE CODE: DTH 414 CREDIT UNIT:						
				CONTACT HOURS	S: 2 THEO	RETICAL: 1				
YEAR:	II	SEMESTER:	I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRAC'	TICAL: 1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills of causes and management of periodontal diseases **GENERAL OBJECTIVES**: On completion of this course, the students should be able to:

- 1.0 Understand the basic concepts of Periodontology
- 2.0 Know the anatomy of the periodontal tissue
- 3.0 Know the Patho-physiology of periodontal disease
- 4.0 Know how to diagnose periodontal disease
- 5.0 Understand the prevention of periodontal disease
- 6.0 Know the surgical procedures of the periodontium
- 7.0 Understand Periodontal Medicine
- 8.0 Understand the special considerations in periodontology

COURSI	E: Periodontology	COURSE CODE: DTH 4	14	CREDIT UNI	T: 2	
		CONTACT HOURS: 2		THEORETIC	AL: 1	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:		PRACTICAL	: 1	
COURSI	E SPECIFICATION : THEORE	TICAL AND PRACTICAL	L			
GOAL:	This course is designed to provide	students with the knowled	lge and skills	of the causes and ma	nagement of period	dontal
diseases						
General	Objective 1.0: Understand the ba	sic concepts of Periodonto	logy			
THEOR	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL CO	ONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome			Outcome	Activities	
	1.1 Define periodontal disease	Explain periodontal	Whiteboard			
		disease	Marker			
	1.2 Outline the Historical		Projector			
	perspectives of periodontal		Textbooks			
	care	perspectives of periodontal care	Computer			
	1.3 Explain the classification	periodolitai care	Journals			
	of periodontal disease	Explain the classification				
		of periodontal disease				
	Objective 2.0: Know the anatomy		T			
2-3	2.1 Describe the structure of	Explain the structure of	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	
	the periodontium	the periodontium	Marker	Identify the	Identify the	models
	• Gingiva	GingivaPeriodontal	Projector		periodontium on	
	Periodontal ligamentAlveolar bone	ligament	Textbooks		mouth models	
	Alveolar bolleCementum	Alveolar bone	Computer	moun mouers		
	Comontum	Cementum	Journals			

	of the periodontium	Explain the Blood supply of the periodontium Explain the Nerve supply of the periodontium		supply of the periodontium on mouth models Identify the nerve supply of the periodontium on	Identify the Blood supply of the periodontium on mouth models Identify the nerve supply of the periodontium	
				mouth models	on mouth models	
General O	bjective 3.0: Know the Patho-p	hysiology of periodontal tis	ssue	1	1	
4-5	 3.1 Describe the etiology of periodontal diseases: Microbial factors (bacterial pathogenesis) Host response 3.2 Explain the role of biofilm in periodontal disease 	Explain the etiology of periodontal diseases: • Microbial factors (bacterial pathogenesis) • Host response Explain the role of biofilm in periodontal disease	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts			
	3.3 Describe the mechanisms of periodontal tissue destruction	Explain the mechanisms of periodontal tissue destruction				
General O	bjective 4.0: Know how to diag	nose periodontal disease				
6-7	4.1 Describe how to examine periodontal tissuesProbing depth measurement	Explain how to examine periodontal tissues • Probing depth measurement	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks	Examine the probing depth, attachment level	Guide students to: Examine the probing depth, attachment level	Periodontal probe

Attachment level	Attachment level	Computer	and gingival	and gingival	CPITN
assessment	assessment	Journals	recession.	recession.	probe
Gingival recession	 Gingival 				
	recession		Examine X-ray	Examine X-ray	Mouth
			film of the	film of the	mirror
4.2 Describe how to	Explain how to		periodontium	periodontium	
radiographically	radiographically evaluate				X-ray Film
evaluate periodontal	periodontal health		Examine cases of	Examine cases of	
health			Periodontal	Periodontal	X-ray
			disease in the	disease in the	Machine
4.3 Explain the classification	Explain the classification		clinic	clinic	
and stages of periodontal	and stages of periodontal				
diseases	diseases		Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
			use of CPITN	use of CPITN	
4.4 Describe the use of	Explain the use of		probe	probe	
Community	Community Periodontal				
Periodontal Index	Index of Treatment Needs		Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
of Treatment Needs (CPITN)	(CPITN)		use of 0HI	use of 0HI	
			Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
4.5 Describe the use of	Explain the use of Oral		use of OHI-S	use of OHI-S	
Oral Hygiene Index	Hygiene Index (0HI)				
(0HI)			Demonstrate the	Demonstrate the	
` '			use of PDI	use of PDI	
4.6 Describe the use of	Explain the use of				
Simplified Oral	Simplified Oral Hygiene				
Hygiene Index	Index				
(OHI-S)	(OHI-S)				
(/					

General (4.7 Describe the use of Periodontal Disease Index (PDI) Objective 5.0: Understand the partial state of oral hygiene and patient education 5.2 Describe Non-surgical periodontal therapy Scaling and root planning Antimicrobial therapies Behavioral interventions 5.3 Describe Periodontal maintenance therapy	Explain the use of Periodontal Disease Index (PDI) Derevention of periodontal dise Explain the importance of oral hygiene and patient education Explain Non-surgical periodontal therapy Scaling and root planning Antimicrobial therapies Behavioral interventions Explain Periodontal maintenance therapy	ease Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts	Demonstrate how to give Oral hygiene Instructions Perform Scaling and Polishing Perform Periodontal maintenance therapy	to give Oral hygiene Instructions Perform Scaling and Polishing in the clinic Perform Periodontal maintenance	Hand scaling instruments Ulstrasonic scaler Mouth mirror Periodontal probe Charts
					therapy in the clinic	
	Objective 6.0: Know the surgic		•	T		1
10-11	6.1 State the indications for periodontal surgery	Explain the indications for periodontal surgery	Whiteboard Marker Projector			
	 6.2 State the types of surgical procedures Flap surgery Bone grafting and regenerative procedures 	Explain the types of surgical procedures • Flap surgery • Bone grafting and regenerative procedures	Textbooks Computer Journals Charts			

Total Conditions associated with periodontal disease: Output		care 6.4 Describe post-operative complications	 Guided tissue regeneration Crown lengthening procedures Explain Post-operative care Explain post-operative complications 				
conditions associated with periodontal disease: • Diabetes • Cardiovascular disease • Respiratory disease etc. 7.2 Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease • Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal					1	T	
periodontal disease: Diabetes Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc. 7.2 Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Textbooks Computer Journals Charts Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal disease aspects of periodontal	12-13	1	1 1				
 Diabetes Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc. Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc. Respiratory disease etc Diabetes Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc Respiratory disease etc Charts Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Diabetes Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc Charts Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal disease 							
 Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc. Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Cardiovascular disease Respiratory disease etc Tomputer Journals Charts Charts Computer Journals Charts Charts Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions 		_ *	*				
 Respiratory disease etc. Respiratory disease etc Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Respiratory disease Respiratory disease Respiratory disease Respiratory disease Respiratory disease Charts 							
7.2 Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease • Respiratory disease etc • Respiratory disease etc Charts • Charts • Respiratory disease etc Explain the relationship between periodontal conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal conditions Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal				-			
7.2 Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the relationship between periodontal conditions Explain the periodontal Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal		Respiratory disease etc.					
7.2 Describe the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the relationship between periodontal conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal conditions Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal				Charts			
disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions Explain the relationship between periodontal disease and other health conditions		7.2 Describe the relationship	disease etc				
disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal		between periodontal	Explain the relationship				
conditions disease and other health conditions 7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal		disease and other health					
7.3 Describe the psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal		conditions	<u> </u>				
psychological aspects of periodontal disease Explain the psychological aspects of periodontal			conditions				
periodontal disease aspects of periodontal							
aspects of periodonal			Explain the psychological				
management disease management		•	aspects of periodontal				
		management	disease management				

General C	General Objective 8.0: Understand the special considerations in periodontology				
14-15	8.1 Describe the Management	Explain the Management	Whiteboard		
	of periodontal disease in	of periodontal disease in	Marker		
	special populations:	special populations	Projector		
	Pregnant women	 Pregnant women 	Textbooks		
	Elderly	• Elderly	Computer		
	Immuno-compromised	• Immunocom-	Journals		
	patients etc.	promised patients			
		etc.			
	8.2 State the Periodontal	Explain the Periodontal			
	implications of dental	implications of dental			
	implants	implants			
	8.3 Describe Periodontal	Explain Periodontal			
	disease and its impact on	disease and its impact			
	oral-systemic health	on oral-systemic health			

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Cariology	COURSE CODE: DTH 415	CREDIT UNIT:	2				
	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL:	1				
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL:	1				

GOAL: This course is designed to provide students with the knowledge and skills to management of dental caries.

- 1.0 Understand the basic concepts of Dental Caries
- 2.0 Know the Anatomy and Histology of Dental Caries
- 3.0 Know the Etiology of Dental Caries
- 4.0 Understand the Diagnosis and classification of Caries
- 5.0 Understand Caries Risk Assessment
- 6.0 Understand the Prevention of Dental Caries
- 7.0 Know the Management of Dental Caries
- 8.0 Understand the Relationship between Special Populations and Cariology

PROGI	RAMME: HIGHER NATIO	NAL DIPLOMA IN DEN'	TAL THERA	PY				
COURS	SE: Cariology	COURSE CODE: DTH 4	15		CRE	DIT UNIT:	2	
		CONTACT HOURS: 2			THE	ORETICAL:	1	
YEAR	: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE:			PRA	CTICAL:	1	
COURS	SE SPECIFIFCATION: THI	EORETICAL AND PRACT	ΓICAL		•			
GOAL:	This course is designed to pro	ovide students with the know	wledge and sk	ills to managen	nent o	of dental caries.		
General	l Objective 1.0: Understand t	he basic concepts of Dental	Caries					
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT			PRACTICAL	L CO	NTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learn	ning	Teacher's		Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome		Activities		
	1.1 Define Dental Caries	Explain Dental Caries	Whiteboard					
	1.2 Explain the significance of the study of Dental Caries in dentistry1.3 Explain the history of the treatment of dental caries	Explain the significance of the study of Dental Caries in dentistry Explain the history of the treatment of dental caries	Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts					
	1.4 Explain how Dental Caries is a global health issue	Explain how Dental Caries is a global health issue						
Genera	al Objective 2.0: Know the A	natomy and Histology of D	ental Caries					
2-3	 2.1 Describe the tooth structure: Enamel Dentin Pulp Cementum 	DentinPulp	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer					
	Cementum	Cementum	Journals					

	2.2 Describe the histological features of carious dentine and enamel2.3 Explain the role of saliva and tooth structure in caries susceptibility	Explain the histological features of carious dentine and enamel Explain the role of saliva and tooth structure in caries susceptibility	Charts		
	Objective 3.0: Know the Etio				
4-5	multifactorial nature of caries development:	nature of caries development:	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts		
		Explain the role of protective factors like			

	2 4 51-:4116	Granida salina and anal				
	1	fluoride, saliva and oral				
	<u> </u>	hygiene against Dental				
	fluoride, saliva and oral	Caries				
	hygiene against Dental					
	Caries					
Gener	al Objective 4.0:Understand th	e Diagnosis and classificati	on of Dental C	Caries		
6-7	4.1 Describe the clinical	Explain the clinical	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Tooth model
	examination techniques	examination techniques	Marker			
	for caries detection		Projector	Examine Dental	Examine Dental	Extracted
			Textbooks	Caries	Caries	Carious tooth
	4.2 Describe the radiographic	Explain the radiographic	Computer			
	examination	examination	Journals			Carious tooth
				Interpret redicarenh	Interpret radiograph	in a patients
	4.3 Explain the classification	Explain the classification	Charts	of Dental Caries	of Dental Caries	mouth
	systems for dental caries	systems for dental caries		of Dental Carles	of Dental Caries	77 611
						X-ray film
	4.4 Explain the differences	Explain the differences				Viewing box
	between acute and	between acute and				Vicwing box
	chronic caries	chronic caries				
	al Objective 5.0: Understand C	T				
8-9	- I	Explain techniques for	Whiteboard		Guide students to:	Cariogram
			Marker			DIA GNIO I
	 Cariogram 		Projector	Identify Caries risk		DIAGNOdent
	 Simplified Oral 	 Simplified Oral 		assessment	assessment	2095
	Hygiene Index(OHI-	Hygiene	Computer	techniques	techniques	DIACNO
	S)	mach(OIII b)	Journals			DIAGNOdent
	 Dental X-rays 	 Dental X-rays 	Charts			pen
	 Laser fluorescence 	• Laser fluorescence		Calculate DMFT	Calculate DMFT	Dental X-ray
	tools e.g	tools e.g		Calculate DIVIF I	Calculate DIVIF I	
	DIAGNOdent 2095	DIAGNOdent				films
	and DIAGNOdent	2095 and				
	pen.	DIAGNOdent pen.				
	Acid-producing	 Acid-producing 				

	bacteria test	Bacteria test			Dental X-ray machine
	 5.2 Explain caries risk factors e.g.: Lifestyle Dietary habits Medical history etc. 5.3 Explain the implementation of risk assessment in clinical practice for prevention and management 5.4 Explain how Decayed Missing Filled Teeth (DMFT) is used in dentistry 	Explain caries risk factors e.g.: Lifestyle Dietary habits Medical history etc. Explain the implementation of risk assessment in clinical practice for prevention and management Explain how Decayed Missing Filled Teeth (DMFT) is used in dentistry			Mouth model Mouth mirror
Genera	l Objective 6.0: Understand the	Learnian of Dental Car	ies		
10-11	6.1 Explain the principles of caries prevention: • Primary • Secondary • Tertiary 6.2 Describe the role of fluoride and its mechanisms in caries prevention		Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts		

Genera	of dietary counseling in caries prevention 6.4 Explain the significance	of oral hygiene practices in caries prevention Explain public health strategies to decrease caries prevalence				
12-13	 7.1 Explain Non-invasive management techniques for dental caries e.g.: Sealants Fluoride Varnishes etc. 7.2 State Minimally invasive approaches to caries treatment 7.3 State traditional restorative techniques for carious lesions e.g.: Amalgam Composite etc. 7.4 State advanced materials 	Explain Non-invasive management techniques for dental caries e.g.:	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts	Identify materials for caries management e.g.: Sealants Composite Amalgam Glass Ionomer Cement etc	Guide students to: Identify materials for caries management e.g.: Sealants Composite Amalgam Glass Ionomer Cement etc	sealants, composite, amalgam, Glass Ionomer Cement (GIC)

 Glass ionomer cement Resin infiltration etc. General Objective 8.0: Understand the company of the com	technologies in caries management e.g.:	ecial populatio	ns and Cariology	
14-15 8.1 Explain caries in pediatric patients: • Unique considerations • Management strategies 8.2 Explain Caries in older adults: • Challenges • Treatment solutions	Explain caries in pediatric patients: • Unique considerations • Management strategies Explain Caries in older adults: • Challenges • Treatment solutions	Whiteboard Marker Projector Textbooks Computer Journals Charts		
8.3 Explain how socio- cultural factors affect caries prevalence and management	Explain how socio- cultural factors affect caries prevalence and management			

EVALUATION: CA 40%

EXAMINATION: 60%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA IN DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Clinical Practice III	COURSE CODE: DTH 416	CREDIT UNIT:	3				
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL:	0				
YEAR: II SEMESTER: I	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 321	PRACTICAL:	3				

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with Knowledge and skills of dental therapy clinical procedures

- 1.0 Know application of fissure sealants
- 2.0 Know topical application of fluoride
- 3.0 Know scaling and polishing
- 4.0 Know sub-gingival curettage
- 5.0 Know temporary filling

	EXAMME: HIGHER 1 E: Clinical Practice II		1	ODE: DTH 416	CREDIT UNIT: 3	
COURS	E. Chincal I factice I.	П				
			CONTACT I		THEORETICAL: 0	
YEAR:	II SEMEST	ER: I	PRE-REQUI	ISITE:	PRACTICAL: 3	
COURS	E SPECIFICATION	N: THEORETICA	AL AND PRACT	TICAL		
				ge and skills of dental therapy	clinical procedures	
General	Objective 1.0: Know	w application of f	issure sealants			
THEO	RETICAL CONTE	NT		PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
					Guide students to:	Fissure
1-4				Identify fissure sealants	Identify fissure sealants	sealants
				Identify the materials/ instruments for fissure sealants	Identify the materials/ instruments for fissure sealants	Etching agent
				Sections	Scaraires	Curing light
				Carryout fissure sealants procedure	Carryout fissure sealants procedure	
General	Objective 2.0: Know	topical applicati	on of fluoride			
				Identify the materials/instruments for	Guide students to: Identify the materials/instruments for	Fluoride gel Brush
				topical fluoride application	topical fluoride application	Fluoride trays
				Carryout the procedures for	Carryout the procedures)
				the application of fluoride	for the application of fluoride	Gauze

						Saliva
						injector
						T.:
<u> </u>		1' 1 1' 1'				Timer
	Objective 3.0: Know	scaling and polishii	ng			
9-11					Guide students to:	Instruments
						for scaling
				Carryout scaling and	Carryout scaling and	and
				polishing	polishing	polishing
						Dental unit
General	Objective 4.0: Know	sub-gingival curetta	age			
13-14					Guide students to:	Instruments
						for scaling
				Carryout sub-gingival	Carryout sub-gingival	and
				curettage	curettage	polishing
						Dental unit
Genera	l Objective 5.0: Knov	v to temporary fillin	ıg			
					Guide students to:	Temporary
				Identify the material/	Identify the material/	filling
				instruments for	instruments for	materials
				mstruments for	mstruments for	
				Commont tomporory filling	Correspond tomporary	Instruments
				Carryout temporary filling	Carryout temporary	for
					filling	temporary
						filling

EVALUATION: CA: 60%

EXAMINATION: 40%

YEAR II SEMESTER II

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY							
COURSE: Ethics and Professional Practice in Dental COURSE CODE: DTH 421 CREDIT UNIT: 3							
Therapy	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 3					
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0					

GOAL: This course is designed to equip students with knowledge of ethical principles and professionalism in dental practice.

- 1.0 Understand Core Ethical Principles in Dentistry
- 2.0 understand Ethical Decision-Making in Dental Practice
- 3.0 Understand Legal and Regulatory Frameworks in Dentistry
- 4.0 Know Ethical Practice and Professionalism in Dentistry

	RAMME: HIGHER NATION					
COURS	SE : Dental Ethics and Profession	nalism COURSE CODE:	DTH 421	Cl	REDIT UNIT:	3
		CONTACT HOU	RS: 3	Tl	HEORETICAL:	3
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II PRE-REQUISITE: PRACTICAL:						
COURS	SE SPECIFICATION: THEO	RETICAL AND PRACTICAL				
GOAL:	This course is designed to equi	p students with knowledge of	ethical princip	oles and profession	onalism in dental p	ractice.
	Objective 1.0: Understand Co			<u>*</u>	<u>*</u>	
THEO	RETICAL CONTENT	·		PRACTICAL	CONTENT	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learn	ing Teacher's	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome	Activities	
1-3	1.1 Define dental ethics and	Explain dental ethics and	Whiteboard			
	professionalism	professionalism	Marker			
			Projector			
	1.2 Define consent	Explain consent	Textbooks Computer			
			Journals			
	1.3 Explain types of consent:	Explain types of consent:	Charts			
	 Implied Consent 	Implied Consent	Guidelines			
	 Surrogate consent 	 Surrogate consent 	Journals			
	 Informed Consent 	• Informed Consent etc.	Regulatory			
	etc.		documents			
	1.4 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance of				
	patient confidentiality and	patient confidentiality and				
	informed consent	informed consent				
	1.5 Outline professional	Explain professional conduct				
	conduct standards as	standards as defined by				
	defined by dental bodies	dental bodies				

	1.6 Explain the consequences of ethical misconduct	Explain the consequences of ethical misconduct		
	al Objective 2.0: understand Eth		tal Practice	
	•	Explain ethical decision-	Textbooks	
',	<u> </u>	making	Journals	
	8		Internet	
	2.2 Explain factors in	Explain factors in evaluating	Computer	
	<u> </u>	1	Projector	
	dilemmas		Whiteboard	
			Marker	
	2.3 Explain how personal	Explain how personal values	Charts	
		and cultural perspectives		
	perspectives influence	influence ethical decisions		
	ethical decisions			
	2.4 Explain ethical dilemmas	Explain ethical dilemmas in		
	in dental practice	dental practice		
General	Objective 3.0: Understand Leg	gal and Regulatory Framework	ks in Dentistry	
8-10	3.1 Describe dental laws and	Explain dental laws and	Textbooks	
	regulations	regulations	Journals	
			Internet	
	3.2 Explain the role of	Explain the role of	Computer	
	professional organizations	professional organizations in	Projector	
	in maintaining ethical	maintaining ethical standards	Whiteboard	
	standards		Marker	
			Charts	
	3.3 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance of		
	continuing education in	continuing education in		
	maintaining	maintaining professionalism		
	professionalism			

	3.4 Explain the reporting	Explain the reporting		_
	mechanisms for ethical	mechanisms for ethical		
	violations	violations		
General	l Objective 4.0: Know Ethical F	Practice and Professionalism is	n Dentistry	
11-14	4.1 Explain strategies for	Explain strategies for	Textbooks	
	promoting ethical practices	promoting ethical practices	Journals	
	in dental settings	in dental settings	Internet	
			Computer	
	4.2 Explain the importance of	Explain the importance of	Projector	
	mentoring in fostering	mentoring in fostering	Whiteboard	
	professionalism	professionalism	Marker	
			Charts	
	4.3 Explain the impact of	Explain the implications of		
	technology on ethical	technology on ethical		
	dental practices	practices		
	4.4 Explain future trends in	Explain future trends in		
	dental ethics and	dental ethics and		
	professionalism	professionalism		

EVALUATION: CA 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY			
COURSE: Clinical Practice IV COURSE CODE: DTH 422 CREDIT UNIT: 3			
	CONTACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 0	
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE: DTH 416	PRACTICAL: 3	

GOAL: This course is designed equip students with the skills of dental therapy clinical procedures

- 1.0 Know teeth-whitening procedure
- 2.0 Know the procedure for paedo-extraction
- 3.0 Know scaling and polishing
- 4.0 know sub-gingival curettage

COURSE: Clinical Practice IV		COURS	SE CODE: DTH 422	CREDIT UNIT: 3		
			CONTA	ACT HOURS: 3	THEORETICAL: 0	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER	: II	PRE-R	EQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 3	
COURS	SE SPECIFICATIO	N: THEORET	ICAL AND F	PRACTICAL		
GOAL:	This course is design	ned equip stude	nts with the sl	kills of dental therapy clinica	l procedures	
General	Objective 1.0: Kno	w teeth-whiten	ing procedure			
THEO	RETICAL CONTE	NT		PRACTICAL CONTENT		
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's	Resources	Specific Learning	Teacher's Activities	Resources
	Outcome	Activities		Outcome		
					Guide students to:	Materials for
1 4				T.1 41 C 41	T.1 41. C 41	teeth-whitening
1-4				•	Identify the	
				materials/instruments for	materials/instruments for	
				teeth-whitening	teeth-whitening	Instruments for
				Carryout the procedures for	Carryout the procedures	teeth-whitening
				the application of teeth-	for the application of teeth-	
				whitening	whitening	
Genera	al Objective 2.0: Und	derstand the pro	ocedure for pa	ledo-extraction		
5-8		•			Guide students to:	Instruments need
						for paedo-
				Identify paedo-extraction	Identify paedo-extraction	extraction
				Identify the	Identify the	
				materials/instruments	materials/instruments	
				needed for paedo-extraction	needed for paedo-	
					extraction	

General	Objective 3.0: Kno	w scaling and po		Demonstrate the process of administering anaesthesia Demostrate the process of paedo-extraction	Demonstrate the process of administering anaesthesia Demostrate the process of paedo-extraction	
9-11				Carryout perform scaling and polishing	Guide students to: Carryout perform scaling and polishing	Instruments for scaling and polishing Dental unit
General	Objective 4.0: Kno	w sub-gingival co	ırettage			
13-14				Carryout sub-gingival curettage	Guide students to: Carryout sub-gingival curettage	Instruments for scaling and polishing Dental unit

EVALUATION: CA 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

PROGRAMME: HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA DENTAL THERAPY				
COURSE: Communicable and Non-Communicable	COURSE CODE: DTH 423	CREDIT UNIT: 2		
Diseases	CONTACT HOURS: 2	THEORETICAL: 2		
YEAR: II SEMESTER: II	PRE-REQUISITE:	PRACTICAL: 0		

GOAL: This course provides students with the knowledge of communicable and non-communicable diseases

- 1.0: Understand the Concepts Communicable and Non-Communicable Diseases
- 2.0: Understand the Causes and Transmission of Communicable Diseases
- 3.0: Understand Risk Factors and Prevention for Non-Communicable Diseases
- 4.0: Understand Methods for Controlling and Managing Communicable Diseases
- 5.0: Understand Prevention, Diagnosis, and Management of Non-Communicable Diseases

COURS	EE: Communicable and Non-Com	municable	COURSE COD	E: DTH 423		CREDIT UN	NIT:	2	
Diseases	S		CONTACT HO	NIBS. 2		THEORETI		2	
YEAR:	II SEMESTER: II		PRE-REQUISI			PRACTICA		0	
	SE SPECIFICATION: THEOR	ETICAL A				IKACIICA	L.	0	
	This course provides students wi				comn	nunicable disa	20000		
	Objective 1.0: Know the Conce						cases		
	RETICAL CONTENT	pts of Collin	inumeable and ivo	ii-Communic	,	CTICAL CO	NITENIT	•	
Week	Specific Learning	Teacher's		Resources	*	ific Learning			Resources
	Outcome	Activities			Outc	ome	Activiti	es	
1-2	1.1 Define communicable and		nmunicable and	Textbooks					
	non-communicable diseases	non-commu	inicable diseases	Whiteboard					
	1.2 List types of communicable	Evaloin tyn	os of	Journals					
	and non-communicable		ble and non-	Markers					
	diseases		ble diseases	Computer					
	diseases	Communica	ole diseases	Internet					
	1.3 Explain the differences in	Explain the	differences in the	Projector					
	the etiology and	etiology and	d transmission of	Charts					
	transmission of	communical	ble and non-						
	communicable and non-	communica	ble diseases						
	communicable diseases								
	Objective 2.0: Understand the O	1			Diseas	es			T
3-5	1	-	sative agents of	Textbooks					
	communicable diseases:	communical	ble diseases:	Whiteboard					
	Bacteria	• Bact	teria	Journals					
	• Viruses	• Viru	ises	Markers					
	Parasites etc.	• Para	sites etc.	Computer					
				Internet					

	transmission:	Explain modes of transmission:	Projector Charts WHO reports
General	Objective 3.0: Understand Risk	Factors and Prevention for No	on-Communicable Diseases
	communicable diseases 3.2 Describe the importance of early detection and regular screening for non-communicable diseases 3.3 Explain lifestyle changes for prevention of non-communicable diseases	Explain risk factors for non-communicable diseases Explain the importance of early detection and regular screening for non-communicable diseases Explain lifestyle changes for prevention of non-communicable diseases	WHO guidelines Screening protocols
	Objective 4.0: Know Methods for		_ _
9-11	4.1 List methods for controlling communicable diseases:Vaccination	controlling communicable diseases:	Textbooks Whiteboard Journals
	 Quarantine 	 Vaccination 	Markers

	 Sanitation 	Quarantine	Computer			
		 sanitation 	Internet			
			Projector			
		Explain the importance of	Charts			
	hygiene and sanitation in	hygiene and sanitation in				
	disease prevention	disease prevention	WHO			
		Explain global and national	reports			
	efforts in combating	efforts in combating	Vaccination			
	communicable diseases.	communicable diseases.	charts			
			Health guidelines			
			garacimes			
General	Objective 5.0: Understand Preven	ention, Diagnosis, and Manage	ement of Non-	-Communicable Dis	seases	
12-15	5.1 Explain non-communicable	Explain non-communicable	Textbooks			
	diseases and their	diseases and their	Whiteboard			
	symptoms:	symptoms:	Journals			
	 Diabetes 	 Diabetes 	Markers			
	 Hypertension 	 Hypertension 	Computer			
	• Cancer etc.	 Cancer etc. 	Internet			
			Projector			
	1	Explain diagnostic tools and methods for non-	Charts			
	and methods for non-		Health			
	communicable diseases	communicable diseases	journals			
	5.3 Describe management	Explain management	Journals			
	strategies for non-	strategies, for non-				
	communicable diseases	communicable diseases				
<u> </u>	<u>l</u>	l .	I		l .	

EVALUATION: CA 30%

EXAMINATION: 70%

PRACTICAL MANUAL FOR HND DENTAL THERAPY

Medical Emergencies	1. Take medical history of a patient
DTH 311	2. Role-play activities for handling high-risk patients
	3. Identify essential drugs for patients with medical emergencies
	4. Demonstrate proper use of emergency devices and equipment
	5. Simulation
	 Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR)
	 Positioning
	 Clear of the air way
	6. Record a complete emergency response :
	 Pre-documentation
	 On-site documentation
	 Post-documentation
	7. Write an emergency report
	8. Demonstrate record-keeping practice
	9. Role play medical team collaboration
Primary Oral Health Care	Conduct oral examinations in a community setting
DTH 312	2. Identify dental issues, with a focus on plaque and gingivitis
	identification.
	3. Conduct community oral screenings.
	4. Identify dental plaque, calculus, and caries in the oral cavity.
	5. Carryout community-oriented oral health education session
	6. Conduct a survey in a community to gather epidemiological data
	on oral diseases.
	7. Collect epidemiological data from a selected community.
	8. Analyze the data.
	9. Design community based oral health programme
	10. Carryout implementation of BPOC

Paedodontics	1. Identify the periodontium on mouth models
DTH 314	2. Identify the Blood supply of the periodontium on mouth models
	3. Identify the Nerve supply of the periodontium on mouth models
	4. Examine the probing depth, attachment level and gingival
	recession.
	5. Examine X-ray film of the periodontium
	6. Examine cases of Periodontal disease in the clinic
	7. Demonstrate the use of CPITN probe
	8. Demonstrate the use of 0HI
	9. Demonstrate the use of OHI-S
	10. Demonstrate the use of PDI
	11. Demonstrate how to give Oral hygiene Instructions
	12. Perform Scaling and Polishing
	13. Perform Periodontal maintenance therapy
Introduction to Orthodontics	1. Identify facial profiles
DTH 315	2. Sketch facial profiles
	3. Draw different classes of malocclusions
	4. Identify malrelations and malpositions of teeth.
	5. Draw malrelationship of 2.1
	6. Identify components of orthodontic appliances.
Dental Radiography II	1. Identify the component of the x-ray machine
DTH 316	2. Demonstrate steps in x-ray production
	Identify potential hazards during operation
	3. Identify types of dental films.
	4. Demonstrate the use of dental films
	5. Perform the different radiographic techniques (periapical, bite-
	wing, occlusal) on models.
	6. Practice film processing and identify any necessary corrections
	during development.

	7. Locate anatomical landmarks on actual radiographs and practice
	identifying each.
	8. Identify pathological features
	9. Differentiate restorative materials in radiographs.
	10. Identify faults on radiographic films
	11. Demonstrate the correct techniques to minimize faults in
	radiographic interpretation
Dental Care of Hospital Patients	Identify common dental ailments in the clinic
DTH 317	2. Demonstrate counselling techniques in delivering oral hygiene
	practice
	3. Demonstrate nursing procedures under instructor supervision.
Clinical Practice I	1. Familiarize with the setting up of the dental clinic
DTH 318	2. Identify equipment in the dental clinic
	3. Identify sanitation kits for the clinic
	4. Identify disinfectants for cleaning
	5. Carry out cleaning of the dental unit
	6. Carry out sterilization of the dental instruments
	7. Carry out patients clerking by documenting outcome of patients
	diagnosis:
	 Patients personal history
	 Vital signs
	 Intra Oral Examination
	Extra Oral Examination etc.
	8. Carry out and document dental charting
	9. Carry out and document vital signs:
	 Blood pressure
	 Temperature

	Respiration	
	Pulse rate	
	10. Document findings from the clinical examination procedures	
	11. Document findings from intra oral and extra oral assessment	
	12. Carry out treatment planning	
	13. Carryout removal dental deposits (scaling and polishing)	
	14. Carryout Oral Hygiene Instruction	
Clinical Practice II	Carryout scaling and polishing	
DTH 321	2. Carry out sub-gingival curettage	
	3. Carryout x-ray procedure	
	4. Process x-ray films	
	5. Interprete x-ray films	
Anesthesiology	Identify local anesthesia instruments.	
DTH 322	2. Identify local and general anesthetic agents in clinical settings.	
	3. Role playing to recognize allergic reactions	
	4. Apply emergency protocols.	
	5. Demonstrate pre-anesthesia counseling techniques.	
	Apply post-operative care measures for simulated patients.	
Dental Instrumentation II	Identify the surfaces of the instruments	
DTH 323	2. Identify the areas of application	
	3. Demonstrate how to sharpen the instruments	
	4. Identify the ultrasonic scaler	
	5. Identify the accessories used with the ultrasonic scalars	
	6. Demonstrate how to operate the ultrasonic scalers.	
	7. Demonstrate how to maintain the ultrasonic scalers	
	8. Identify the instruments for extraction of deciduous dentition	
	9. Identify the various types of extraction forceps	
	10. Identify the different types of elevators	
	11. Demonstrate the use of dental syringe	
	12. Demonstrate sterilization	

	13. Carryout storage of extraction forceps elevators and the dental	
	syringe	
	14. Identify the instruments required for temporary filling	
	15. Demonstrate the procedure for washing, sterilizing and storing of temporary filing instruments	
	16. Identify the instruments required for permanent filling	
	17. Carry out simple maintenance of the instruments	
Oral Pathology	1. Identify:	
DTH 324	• attrition	
	abrasion	
	Erosion in clinical models	
	2. Identify symptoms of viral, bacterial, and fungal infections in	
	oral cavity.	
	3. Identify benign and malignant neoplasms using lab models and	
	histology slides.	
	4. Identify clinical signs of oral diseases of unknown origin in patients.	
	5. Identify symptoms of systemic diseases in oral examinations.	
	6. Perform case analyses of patients with systemic diseases.	
	7. Identify clinical signs of gingivitis and periodontitis.	
Oral Diagnosis and Treatment Planning	1. Take a patient history, covering dental, and medical details.	
DTH 325	2. Conduct a full oral examination using tools and techniques.	
	3. Record detailed findings from the examination.	
	4. Interpret findings based on examination results	
	5. Perform diagnostic assessments	
	6. Interpret results from diagnostic tools and tests.	
	7. Formulate a provisional and final diagnosis.	
	8. Develop a treatment plan based on diagnostic findings	
	9. Justify treatment decisions based on diagnostic findings	

Introduction to Dental Gerontology	Identify age-related dental conditions through sample cases	
DTH 326	2. Examine case studies to relate systemic conditions to dental	
	issues	
	3. Role-play scenarios focusing on communication and treatment	
	adaptation	
	4. Develop a care plan involving caregivers and interdisciplinary	
	teams	
	5. Evaluate treatment plans for geriatric patients based on	
	individual needs	
	6. Develop preventive care strategies for geriatric patients	
	7. Visit to Older adult's home	
	8. Design an evaluation plan for a geriatric dental program.	
Care of Patient with special needs	Practice positioning and stabilizing techniques with special	
DTH 327	needs patient models.	
	2. Use adaptive equipment to conduct basic dental procedures on	
	simulated patients	
	3. Use communication aids to interact with a simulated patient with	
	sensory impairments.	
	4. Engage in role-play with caregivers and practice building	
	rapport.	
	5. Demonstrate cultural sensitivity during interactions.	
	6. Develop a dental care plan for a simulated special needs patient.	
	7. Demonstrate handling of emergency scenarios with special	
	needs considerations.	
Contemporary Dentistry	1. Observe demonstrations of CAD/CAM systems in operation.	
DTH 411	2. Practice digital impressions and 3D imaging on models.	
	3. Visit to a clinic using digital impression kits and 3D models	
	4. Simulate a teledentistry consultation session	
	5. Interact with robotics simulations.	
	6. Test functionalities of dental wearable devices on models.	

	7. Visit to a clinic using wearable dental device, instruction	
	manuals	
	8. Use AI software for diagnostic exercises on dental case.	
	9. Observe laser therapy demonstrations in dental treatments.	
	10. Visit to a clinic using Laser therapy, safety equipment	
Oral Health Education and Promotion	Demonstrate the following	
DTH 412	Brushing techniques	
	• Flossing	
	2. Design an oral health educational program e.g.:	
	School oral health awareness	
	Market oral health awareness	
	Community oral awareness	
	Water floridation	
	3. Demonstrate Role play to illustrate oral health education	
	4. Create educational materials such as	
	Create educational materials such as Brochures	
	• Posters	
	PostersDigital content etc	
	5. Partner with a school, health facility or community for Oral	
	Health Education, Promotion and campaign.	
	Treatur Education, I follotion and campaign.	
Dental Office Management	Prepare a sample budget and estimate for typical dental office	
DTH 413	operations.	
	2. Carryout the following:	
	 Stock-taking 	
	Inventory Control	
	Issuing Supply	
	Shelf life monitoring	
	• Storage	

Periodontology	1. Identify the periodontium on mouth models
DTH 414	2. Identify the Blood supply of the periodontium on mouth models
	3. Identify the Nerve supply of the periodontium on mouth models
	4. Clinically examine the probing depth, attachment level and
	gingival recession.
	5. Examine X-ray film of the periodontium
	6. Examine cases of Periodontal disease in the clinic
	7. Demonstrate the use of CPITN probe
	8. Demonstrate the use of 0HI
	9. Demonstrate the use of OHI-S
	10. Demonstrate the use of PDI
	11. Demonstrate how to give Oral hygiene Instructions
	12. Perform Scaling and Polishing in the clinic
	13. Perform Periodontal maintenance therapy in the clinic
Cariology	1. Examine Dental Caries
DTH 415	2. Interpret radiograph of Dental Caries
	3. Identify Caries risk assessment techniques:
	Cariogram
	 Simplified Oral Hygiene Index(OHI-S)
	• Dental X-rays
	 Laser fluorescence tools e.g DIAGNOdent 2095 and
	DIAGNOdent pen.
	Acid-producing Bacteria test
	4. Calculate DMFT
	5. Identify materials for caries management e.g.:
	• Sealants
	• Composite
	Amalgam
	Glass Ionomer Cement etc.

Clinical Practice III	1. Identify fissure sealants	
DTH 416	2. Identify the materials/ instruments for fissure sealants	
	3. Carryout fissure sealants procedure	
	4. Identify the materials/instruments for topical fluoride application	
	5. Carryout the procedures for the application of fluoride	
	6. Carryout scaling and polishing	
	7. Carryout sub-gingival curettage	
	8. Identify the material/instruments for	
	9. Carryout temporary filling	
Clinical Practice IV	1. Identify the materials/instruments for teeth-whitening	
DTH 422	2. Carryout the procedures for the application of teeth-whitening	
	3. Identify paedo-extraction	
	4. Identify the materials/instruments needed for paedo-extraction	
	5. Demonstrate the process of administering anesthesia	
	6. Demostrate the process of paedo-extraction	
	7. Carryout perform scaling and polishing	
	8. Carryout sub-gingival curettage	

LIST OF MINIMUM RESOURCES GENERAL LABORATORY

1	Biology/Anatomy/ Histology/Pathology
2	Chemistry/Nutrition/Physiology
3	Physics
4	Photo/Audio Visual Studio and Dark Room

DENTAL THERAPY EQUIPMENT

S/N	EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
1	Abrasives	1 bucket
2	Adaptive tools	5 sets
3	Anatomical charts	Assorted
4	Anatomical model of head and neck	2
5	Anatomical Models	2
6	Anesthetic Models	2
7	Amalgamator	2
8	Amalgam condenser	10
9	Arkansas stone	5
10	Articulator	2
11	Atlas	Assorted
12	Automated mixers	2
13	Automated sharpening instruments	1 set
14	Autoclaves (Digital)	2
15	Ball burnisher	10
16	Bandages	Assorted
17	Bristle brush	Assorted
18	Brush holder	Assorted

19	Cabinets	Assorted
20	Calliper	6
21	Caries probe	10
22	Carver (Lecron)	30
23	Carving Instruments	2 sets
24	Carving Wax	5 packs
25	Casting models	10
26	Charts	Assorted
27	Check list	Assorted
28	Chemical addictive	Assorted
29	Chewing sticks	Assorted
30	Chisel	5
31	Clinical thermometer	30
32	Clinical models	Assorted
33	College tweezers	30
34	Contra-angled hand piece	10
35	Communication aids	Assorted
36	Compressor	10
37	Cotton wool	Assorted
38	CPITN probe	15
39	Culture media	Assorted
40	Curing light	2
41	Curettes	30
42	Cup	Assorted
43	Dental films	Assorted
44	Dental Model	Assorted
45	Dental prosthetics	Assorted
46	Dental Unit	10
47	Denture brush	Assorted

48	Developing tank	2
49	Diagnostic guides	Assorted
50	Diagnostic tools	Assorted
51	Disinfectants	Assorted
52	Disposal containers	Assorted
53	Disposable syringe	Assorted
54	Drury scaler	30 pieces
55	Dry heat sterilizer	1
56	Dry heat oven	1
57	Electronic toothbrush	5
58	Emergency Forms	Assorted
59	Emergency Kits	3
60	Enema syringe	5
61	Etching agents	Assorted
62	Excavators	30
63	Extraction Forceps (Deciduous) Upper Anterior Teeth	30
64	Extraction Forceps (Deciduous) Upper Posterior Teeth	30
65	Extraction Forceps (Deciduous) Lower Anterior Teeth	30
66	Extraction Forceps (Deciduous) Lower Posterior Teeth	30
67	Face mask	Assorted
68	Fillers	Assorted
69	Film holder	10
70	Fine excavator	30
71	Fine Scalers	30
72	First aid box	5
73	Fixing solution	Assorted
74	Fluoride gel	Assorted
75	Fluoride trays	10
76	Floss (Dental)	Assorted

77	Gauze	Assorted
78	General anesthetic references	Assorted
79	Glass Ionomer cement (GIC)	5
80	Glass slab	20
81	Gross Scalers	Assorted
82	Handpieces (fast)	5
83	Histology slides	Assorted
84	Hoe Scalers	30
85	Human Skeleton	1
86	Hunt syringe	Assorted
87	Hydrogel	Assorted
88	Hydrogen peroxide	Assorted
89	Instruments/ materials for temporary filling	1 set
90	Interdens	Assorted
91	Jacquette	30
92	Laboratory Models	1
93	Lead apron	2
94	Lead shield	1
95	Leaded wall	
96	Local Anesthetic samples	Assorted
97	Lubricating oil	Assorted
98	Materials for teeth whitening	Assorted
99	Mannequin	Assorted
101	Manual toothbrush	Assorted
102	Medical Emergency Kit	5
103	Microscope	5
104	Micro style oil	Assorted
105	Mixing Bowl	12
106	Mixing Spatula	12

107	Mouth mirror	30
108	Mouth wash agents	Assorted
109	Needles	Assorted
110	Normal saline	Assorted
111	Nursing care plan	Assorted
112	Orthodontics appliances	Assorted
113	Oxygen cylinder	2
114	Oxygen mask	Assorted
115	Pamphlets	Assorted
116	Periodontal probe	30
117	Phantom Head	15
118	Plaster dressing materials	Assorted
119	Polishing strip	Assorted
120	Plaster of Paris (POP)	1 Drum
121	Port Polishers	Assorted
122	Posters	Assorted
123	Processing tray	10
124	PPE	Assorted
125	Presentation kit	Assorted
126	Prosthetic materials	Assorted
127	Public address system	Assorted
128	Pulp tester	10
129	Pumice Projector	1 Drum
130	Radiation monitoring devices	1
131	Radiographic images	Assorted
132	Reagents	Assorted
133	Restorative materials (conservative)	Assorted
134	Robotic dental simulation	Assorted
135	Root Elevators	30

136	Rubber Dam Kits	
137	Safety box	1 Packet
138	Sample emergency forms	Assorted
139	Sample feedback forms	Assorted
140	Sample of deposit	Assorted
141	Sample patients folders	Assorted
142	Sample standing order ICOH/WHO	Assorted
143	Sample survey forms	Assorted
144	Scrubbing brushes	5
145	Fissure Sealant	Assorted
146	Self-developing films	Assorted
147	Sensory Impairment	Assorted
148	Simulation tools	Assorted
149	Skull skeleton	1
150	Slides	Assorted
151	Software (Dental)	Assorted
152	Solvents	Assorted
153	Spot Lamp	30
154	Spatula	30
155	Stabilizing equipment	10
156	Stainless kidney dish	30
157	Chemical Sterilization (Agents)	Assorted
158	Stethoscope	30
159	Storage box	Assorted
160	Surgical gloves	Assorted
161	Suture Materials	
162	Sphygmomanometer	10
163	Syringes	Assorted
164	System Models	Assorted

165	Teeth sets	Assorted
167	Telemedicine resources	Assorted
168	Timer	30
169	Tongue Model	5
170	Tourniquet	5
171	Toothpaste	Assorted
172	Top bond	Assorted
173	Transparency models	1
174	Trolley	5
175	Ultra sonic scalers	15
176	Vernier caliper	10
177	Viewing box Visual aids	Assorted
178	Vital sign apparatus	Assorted
179	Vital signs armamentarium	Assorted
180	Water chips	Assorted
181	Water flossier	Assorted
182	Water sterilizer	1
183	Wearable dental devices	Assorted
184	Weighing balance	2
185	Weighing Scale	2
186	Wood-points	Assorted
187	Wristwatch	Assorted
188	x-ray dark room	1
189	x-films	Assorted
190	x-ray machine	1



LIST OF PARTICIPANTS FOR REVIEW WORKSHOP FOR NATIONAL DIPLOMA (ND) AND HIGHER NATIONAL DIPLOMA (HND) DENTAL THERAPY

S/N	NAME	ADDRESS	EMAIL
1.	Ojo Mercy O. (Mrs)	Dental Therapists Registration Board of	Wumidt12@gmail.com
		Nigeria	dtrbnb@gmail.com
2.	Dr Olurotimi Majekodunmi	Inter- Country Centre for Oral Health, Jos,	rotex@doctor.com
		Plateau	
3.	Aliyu Khalid	Shehu Idris College of Health, Sciences and	aliyukhalid38@gmail.com
		Technology, Makarfi	
4.	Elisha Damina Akau	Shehu Idris College of Health, Sciences and	dak5051@gmail.com
		Technology, Makarfi	
5.	Henry O. Ojo	Irrua Specialist Teaching Hospital, Irrua, Edo	henryolufemiojo@gmail.com
		State	
6.	Ibrahim Dalhat	Dental Therapists Registration Board of	ibrahimdalhat@gmail.com
		Nigeria, Abuja Liaison Office	
7.	Bamidele Kayode Ibraheem	Dental Therapists Registration Board of	bamideleib2012@gmail.com
		Nigeria/Head Abuja Liaison office	
8.	Dr Johnson .J. Omale	Federal University of Allied Health Sciences,	omalejj@gmail.com
		Enugu	
9.	Balarabe Musa Hussain	Federal University of Allied Health Sciences,	balarabemusahussain@gmail.com
		Enugu	
10.	Elizabeth Orji	Family Dental Clinic, Jalingo	orjielizabeth32@gmail.com
11	Sakiru Bello	Dental Therapists Registration Board of	meetsakiru@gmail.com
		Nigeria	

12	Gbebikan Adewunmi	Dental Therapists Registration Board of	adewunmi.joseph@yahoo.com		
		Nigeria			
13	Dr Anisere Dele	Ogun State Polytechnic of Health and Allied	deleanisere@gmail.com		
		Sciences			
NBT	NBTE STAFF				
14	Prof. Idris M. Bugaje	Executive Secretary, NBTE Kaduna	es@nbte.gov.ng		
15	Prof. Diya'uddeen Hassan	SA Executive Secretary, NBTE Kaduna			
16	Dr. Musa Hatim Koko	Director, CDD	hatinilion@gmail.com		
17	Samaila Tanko	Director Monotechnic, NBTE	Samaila2007@gmail.com		
18	Ruqayya M.Rabiu	NBTE	rukyras4real@gmail.com		
19	Jamila Jibrin	NBTE	jibrinjamila@yahoo.com		
20	Zainab Abubakar Atiku	NBTE	atikuzaniab@gmail.com		
21	Ahmad Rufau Mahmoud	NBTE	Rufahm98@gmail.com		
SECRETARIAT					
22	Lawal Tobi Khadijat	NBTE	lawaltobi2014@gmail.com		
23	Safiyah Mahdi	NBTE Consult	mahd.safiya0@gmail.com		